

EXPOSURE DRAFT

ED XX/11
(July 2011)

**Proposed Standard on
Assurance Engagements
ASAE 34XX**
*Assurance Engagements
involving Corporate
Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial
Information Engagements
involving Corporate
Fundraisings and Prospective
Financial Information*

Issued for Comment by the **Auditing and Assurance Standards Board**

Draft

DISCLAIMER

This document contains draft proposals to be considered at a meeting of the AUASB, and does not necessarily reflect the final decisions and/or proposals to be contained in a published Exposure Draft or Auditing Standard. No responsibility is taken by the AUASB for the results of reliance, actions or omissions to act on the basis of any information contained in this document (including appendices), or for any errors or omissions in it.



Australian Government

Auditing and Assurance Standards Board

Commenting on this Exposure Draft

Comments on this Exposure Draft should be forwarded so as to arrive by no later than ~~30 September 2011~~ ~~31 August 2011~~ ~~30 June 2011~~. Comments should be addressed to:

The Chairman
Auditing and Assurance Standards Board
PO Box 204
Collins Street West
Melbourne Victoria 8007
AUSTRALIA
E-mail: edcomments@auasb.gov.au

A copy of all non-confidential submissions will be placed on public record on the AUASB website: www.auasb.gov.au

Obtaining a Copy of this Exposure Draft

This Exposure Draft is available on the AUASB website: www.auasb.gov.au

Contact Details

Auditing and Assurance Standards Board Phone: (03) 8080 7400
Level 7, 600 Bourke Street Fax: (03) 8080 7450
Melbourne Victoria 3000 E-mail: enquiries@auasb.gov.au
AUSTRALIA

Postal Address:
PO Box 204
Collins Street West
Melbourne Victoria 8007
AUSTRALIA

COPYRIGHT

© 2011 Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (AUASB). The text, graphics and layout of this Exposure Draft are protected by Australian copyright law and the comparable law of other countries. The Exposure Draft may be reproduced in print for the sole purpose of preparing a written submission to the AUASB in respect of the Exposure Draft. Otherwise, no part of the Exposure Draft may be reproduced, stored or transmitted in any form or by any means without the prior written permission of the AUASB except as permitted by law.

ISSN 1030-603X

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

CONTENTS

PREFACE

AUTHORITY STATEMENT

	<i>Paragraphs</i>	<i>Pages</i>
Application		1-2
Operative Date		3
Introduction		
Objectives		11
Definitions		12
Requirements		
Historical financial information		19
<u>Pro Forma Historical Financial Information</u>		68
<u>Prospective Financial Information</u>		97
<u>Pro forma Forecast</u>		78
<u>Aggregated Pro Forma Financial Information</u>		90
<u>Prospective Financial Information</u>		97
Proper Compilation of Pro Forma Financial Information		146
Application and Other Explanatory Material		
Historical financial information		
<u>Pro Forma Historical Financial Information</u>		
<u>Aggregated Pro Forma Financial Information</u>		
<u>Prospective Financial Information</u>		
<u>Pro forma Forecast</u>		
Proper Compilation of Pro Forma Financial Information		
Conformity with <u>Australian-International</u> Standards on Assurance Engagements		
Appendices		

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Appendix 1: Types of Financial Information included in a public document

Appendix 2: Illustration of an Engagement Letter

Appendix 3: Illustration of a Representation Letter

Appendix 4: Illustrations of Independent Assurance Reports

Draft

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

DETAILED CONTENTS

PREFACE

AUTHORITY STATEMENT

	<i>Paragraphs</i>
Application	1
Operative Date	2
Introduction	
Scope of this Standard on Assurance Engagements	3-11
Objectives	12
Definitions	13
Requirements	
Ethical Requirements	14
Quality Control	15
Professional Scepticism	16
Professional Judgement	17
Complying with Standards that are relevant to the engagement	18-19
Inability to Comply with the Requirements of this ASAE or other AUASB Standards	20-21
Historical financial information	22
Assurance Engagement Acceptance	23-27
Agreeing on the Terms of the Assurance Engagement	28-29
Changes in the Terms of the Assurance Engagement	30-32
Planning the Assurance Engagement	1-37
Performing the Engagement	1-44
Evaluating the Sufficiency and Appropriateness of Evidence Obtained	1
Other Information included in the document	46-49

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Going Concern Considerations	50-52
Consideration of Events up to the date of the Assurance Report	53-1
Consideration of Events Identified after the date of the Assurance Report	55-56
Written Representations	57-60
Forming the Assurance Conclusion	61-63
Preparing the Assurance Report	64-72
Consent to the Inclusion of the Assurance Report in a Public Document	73-74
Documentation	75-76
Pro-Forma Historical Financial Information	77
Assurance Engagement Acceptance	78-79
Agreeing on the Terms of the Assurance Engagement	80-81
Planning the Assurance Engagement	82-83
Performing the Engagement	84-87
Evaluating the Sufficiency and Appropriateness of Evidence Obtained	88
Other Information included in the document	1
Going Concern Considerations	90
Consideration of Events Up to the date of the Assurance Report	91
Consideration of Events Identified after date of the Assurance Report	92
Written Representations	93
Forming the Assurance Conclusion	1-1
Preparing the Assurance Report	96-98
Use of the Going Concern Assumptions Appropriate but a Material Uncertainty Exists	99
Consent to the Inclusion of the Assurance Report in a Public Document	100

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Documentation.....	101
Prospective Financial Information.....	102
Assurance Engagement Acceptance.....	103-107
Agreeing on the Terms of the Assurance Engagement.....	108-109
Changes in the Terms of the Assurance Engagement.....	110-112
Planning the Assurance Engagement.....	1-117
Performing the Engagement.....	1-124
Evaluating the Sufficiency and Appropriateness of Evidence Obtained.....	125-1
Other Information included in the document.....	127-130
Going Concern Considerations.....	131-133
Consideration of Events up to the date of the Assurance Report.....	134-1
Consideration of Events Identified after the date of the Assurance Report.....	136-137
Written Representations.....	138-141
Forming the Assurance Conclusion.....	1-144
Preparing the Assurance Report.....	145-151
Use of Going Concern Assumption Appropriate but a Material Uncertainty Exists.....	152
Consent to the Inclusion of the Assurance Report in a Public Document.....	153-154
Documentation.....	155-156
Pro-forma Forecast.....	1
Assurance Engagement Acceptance.....	158-160
Agreeing on the Terms of the Assurance Engagement.....	161
Planning the Assurance Engagement.....	162
Performing the Engagement.....	163
Evaluating the Sufficiency and Appropriateness of Evidence Obtained.....	164

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Other Information Included in the Document	165
Going Concern Considerations	166
Consideration of Events up to the date of Assurance Report	167
Consideration of Events after the date of Assurance Report	168
Written Representations	169
Forming the Assurance Conclusion	170
Preparing the Assurance Report	171 173
Consent to the Inclusion of the Assurance Report in a Public Document	174
Documentation	175
Proper Compilation of Pro Forma Financial Information	
Engagement Acceptance	176 177
Agreeing on the Terms of the Assurance Engagement	178
Planning the Assurance Engagement	179 180
Performing the assurance engagement	181 183
Evaluating the Sufficiency and Appropriateness of Evidence Obtained	184
Written Representations	185
Evaluating the Sufficiency and Appropriateness of Evidence Obtained	186
Forming the Assurance Conclusion	1
Preparing the Assurance Report	188
Application and Other Explanatory Material	
Type of Assurance	A2 A3
Non-Assurance Services	A4 A5
Historical Financial Information	
Engagement Acceptance	A1 A1
Agreeing on the Terms of the Assurance Engagement	A10 A1
Changes in the Terms of the Assurance Engagement	A16 A1

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Planning the Assurance Engagement	A18 A25
Performing the assurance engagement	A26 A31
Evaluating the Sufficiency and Appropriateness of Evidence Obtained	A32 A33
Other Information included in the document	A1
Going Concern Considerations	A35 A38
Consideration of Events up to the Date of the Assurance Report	A39
Consideration of Events Identified after the date of the Assurance Report	A40 A1
Written Representations	A1 A45
Forming the Assurance Conclusion	A1
Preparing the Assurance Report	A47 A1
Use of Going Concern Assumption Appropriate but a Material Uncertainty Exists	A51
Consent to the Inclusion of the Assurance Report in a Public Document	A52 A1
Documentation	A54 A55
Pro Forma Historical Financial Information	
Agreeing on the Terms of the Assurance Engagement	A56 A57
Planning the Assurance Engagement	A58 A1
Performing the assurance engagement	A60
Preparing the Assurance Report	A61
Prospective Financial Information	
Assurance Engagement Acceptance	A62 A68
Agreeing on the Terms of the Assurance Engagement	A1 A1
Changes in the Terms of the Assurance Engagement	A1 A76
Planning the Assurance Engagement	A77 A1
Performing the assurance engagement	A85 A92

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Evaluating the Sufficiency and Appropriateness of Evidence Obtained	A93 A1
Other Information included in the document	A1
Going Concern Considerations	A96 A99
Consideration of Events up to the date of the Assurance Report	A100
Consideration of Events Identified after the date of the Assurance Report	A101 A1
Written Representations	A103 A106
Forming the Assurance Conclusion	A107
Preparing the Assurance Report	A108 A1
Use of Going Concern Assumption Appropriate but a Material Uncertainty Exists	A1
Consent to the Inclusion of the Assurance Report in a Public Document	A113 A114
Documentation	A115 A116
Pro Forma Forecast	
Engagement Acceptance	A117 A118
Planning the Assurance Engagement	A119 A1
Performing the assurance engagement	A121
Proper Compilation of Pro Forma Financial Information	
Engagement Acceptance	A122
Agreeing on the Terms of the Assurance Engagement	A123
Planning the Assurance Engagement	A124 A130
Performing the assurance engagement	A1 A143
Evaluating the Sufficiency and Appropriateness of Evidence Obtained	A144
Written Representations	A145

Conformity with Australian Standards on Assurance Engagements

Appendices:

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Appendix 1: Types of Financial Information

Appendix 2: Illustration of an Engagement Letter

Appendix 3: Materiality Considerations

Appendix 4: Illustration of an Engagement Letter

Appendix 5: Illustrations of Assurance Reports

Draft

PREFACE

Reasons for Issuing ED XX/11

The AUASB issues Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX *Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or Prospective Financial Information* pursuant to the requirements of the legislative provisions explained below.

The AUASB is an independent statutory board of the Australian Government established under section 227A of the *Australian Securities and Investments Commission Act 2001*, as amended (ASIC Act). Under section 227B of the ASIC Act, the AUASB may formulate Assurance Standards for other purposes.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
[Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or Prospective Financial Information](#)

Main Proposals

This proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements establishes requirements and provides application and other explanatory material for undertaking and reporting on assurance engagements relating to corporate fundraisings and prospective financial information included in, or to be included in, a public document, ~~or private report, a non-public document or for other purposes.~~

Proposed Operative Date

It is intended that this proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements will be operative for assurance engagements related to corporate fundraising ~~and/or~~ the examination of prospective financial information commencing on or after 1 January 2012.

Request for Comments

Comments are invited on this Exposure Draft of the proposed re-issuance of ASAE 34XX [Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or Prospective Financial Information](#) by no later than [30 September 2011](#). The AUASB is seeking comments from respondents on the following questions:

1. Have applicable laws and regulations been appropriately addressed in the proposed standard?
2. Are there any references to relevant laws or regulations that have been omitted?
3. Are there any laws or regulations that may, or do, prevent or impede the application of the proposed ~~s~~Standard, or may conflict with the proposed ~~s~~Standard?
4. What, if any, are the additional significant costs to/benefits for auditors and the business community arising from compliance with ~~the main changes to~~ the requirements of this proposed ~~Auditing Standard Standard~~? If there are significant costs, do these outweigh the benefits to the users of ~~audit-assurance~~ services?
5. Are there any other significant public interest matters that constituents wish to raise?
6. Should this proposed ~~ASAE-Standard~~ be split according to the type of financial information?

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

7. Should the section covering assurance on the proper compilation of pro forma financial information be included in a separate ~~ASAE~~Standard?

The AUASB prefers that respondents express a clear opinion on whether the proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements, as a whole, is supported and that this opinion be supplemented by detailed comments, whether supportive or critical, on the above matters. The AUASB regards both supportive and critical comments as essential to a balanced review of the Standard on Assurance Engagements.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
[Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or](#)
[Prospective Financial Information](#)

AUTHORITY STATEMENT

The Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (AUASB) formulates this Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX [Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or Prospective Financial Information](#) pursuant to section 227B of the *Australian Securities and Investments Commission Act 2001*.

This Standard on Assurance Engagements is to be read in conjunction with ASA 100 *Preamble to AUASB Standards*, which sets out the intentions of the AUASB on how the AUASB Standards are to be understood, interpreted and applied.

Dated: <TypeHere>

M H Kelsall
Chairman - AUASB

**STANDARD ON ASSURANCE ENGAGEMENTS
ASAE 34XX**

**Assurance Engagements involving Corporate
Fundraisings and/or Prospective Financial
Information**

Application

1. This Standard on Assurance Engagements applies to assurance engagements relating to:
 - (a) the ~~examination undertaking and reporting on~~ historical and/or prospective financial information related to a fundraising, included in, or to be included in, a public document;
 - (b) the ~~examination undertaking and reporting on~~ historical and/or prospective financial information related to a fundraising, not included in, or ~~not~~ to be included in a public document, that is intended to be distributed to ~~a party external~~ users internal and/or external to the entity; and
 - (c) the undertaking and reporting of ~~fn~~ the proper compilation of pro forma financial information, that is intended to be distributed to users external to the entity.
- ~~2. This Standard on Assurance Engagements also applies to assurance engagements that involve~~ relating to:
 - ~~(a) the undertaking and reporting examination of historical and/or prospective financial information, related to a fundraising, not included in, or to be included in a public document, and that is intended to be distributed within the entity, other than to the party responsible for the preparation of the financial information; and~~
 - ~~(b) the undertaking and reporting examination of prospective financial information that is the subject of an assurance report not included in, or to be included in, a public document.~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Operative Date

- ~~3-2.~~ This Standard on Assurance Engagements is operative for assurance engagements ~~related to corporate fundraisings and the examination of prospective financial information~~ that commence on or after [insert date].

Introduction

Scope of this Standard on Assurance Engagements

- ~~3.~~ This ASAE deals with the responsibilities of the assurance practitioner when undertaking and reporting preparing an assurance report on financial information prepared by ~~a the~~ responsible party in respect of corporate fundraisings (including initial public offerings, takeovers, schemes of arrangements and other corporate transactions) ~~and/or~~ the examination of prospective financial information, ~~and the proper compilation of pro forma financial information~~. It deals with the responsibilities of the assurance practitioner when undertaking and reporting on prospective financial information. References in this ASAE to “fundraisings” is taken to mean corporate fundraisings, and/or the examination of prospective financial information for fundraisings, or other purposes, and/or the proper compilation of pro forma financial information, unless otherwise stated.
4. This ASAE applies regardless of whether such financial information is included, or to be included in, a public document, or ~~prepared for other purposes~~ a non-public document. References in this ASAE to “the document” are taken to mean a public document, ~~a private report, or non-public other document, that, prepared in connection with related to a~~ corporate fundraising ~~and/or the examination of the examination of~~ prospective financial information.
5. The assurance practitioner may be requested to undertake and provide assurance on a single type of financial information, or a combination (either stand alone or aggregated) related to the fundraising, or the compilation process covering the financial information (rather than the financial information itself). Furthermore the financial information may relate to a single entity or multiple entities (in the case of a merger or acquisition). Examples of different types of such Ffinancial information include that is the subject of the assurance engagement an assurance report may be in the form of are:

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (a) historical financial information; and/or
- ~~(b) pro forma historical financial information; and/or~~
- ~~(c) pro forma forecast; and/or~~
- ~~(d) prospective financial information; and/or~~
- ~~(e) pro forma forecast; and/or~~
- ~~(f) —~~

~~and may be stand alone or aggregated. The assurance practitioner may also be asked to undertake and report on report on the proper compilation of pro forma financial information rather than the underlying pro forma financial information itself.~~

~~6. References in this ASAE to “financial information” are taken to mean the specific financial information on which the assurance practitioner intends to express an assurance conclusion, unless otherwise stated.~~

~~6-7. This ASAE sets out the requirements and related application and other explanatory material for each type of financial information in separate sections, however it is acknowledged that assurance engagements related to fundraisings may often involve the assurance practitioner being asked to undertake and report on a combination of financial information. In such circumstances, the assurance practitioner conducts the assurance engagement in accordance with the requirements related to the type of financial information in the appropriate section and reports the assurance conclusion for each financial information type in an individual assurance report, or combined assurance report. Where a composite assurance report is prepared, the assurance conclusions on each type of financial information are presented in clearly distinguished separate sections to prevent any misunderstanding on the nature of the assurance provided on each type of financial information.~~

Types of Assurance

~~7-8. Assurance engagements related to a fundraising, or the examination of prospective financial information related to a fundraising, or not related to a fundraising, or to a corporate fundraising or prospective financial information, by their nature and scope of procedures performed, are ordinarily conducted to express limited assurance on financial~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~information where that financial information is pro forma or prospective in nature engagements. Where the financial information is historical, However, the assurance engagement may be conducted to express assurance practitioner may, in the circumstances of the assurance engagement, agree with the responsible party to reasonable assurance, conduct a reasonable assurance engagement, for example, where the financial information is historical. Additionally, where the assurance practitioner performs an assurance engagement to express an opinion on the proper compilation of pro forma financial information, the assurance provided is ordinarily limited assurance. However nothing in this ASAE precludes the assurance practitioner from exercising professional judgement to determine the type of assurance that is appropriate in the engagement circumstances. Such circumstances ordinarily involve reasonable assurance on historical financial information only.~~ (Ref: Para. 0-A2)

Non-Assurance Services

~~8.9.~~ The assurance practitioner may be requested by the responsible party to perform both assurance and non-assurance services. This ASAE applies only to ~~the~~ assurance services. (Ref: Para. A3-A4)

Relationship with Other AUASB Standards

~~9.10.~~ This ASAE deals with specific ~~additional~~ considerations in the application of ASRE 2405 *Review of Historical Financial Information Other than a Financial Report* and ASAE 3000 *Assurance Engagements Other than Audits or Reviews of Historical Financial Information* to assurance engagements relating to ~~the undertaking and reporting on to corporate fundraisings and prospective financial information~~ fundraisings. In particular, where the purpose of the assurance engagement is to obtain:

- (a) limited assurance on historical ~~(or pro forma historical)~~ financial information, or pro forma historical financial information, the assurance engagement is performed in accordance with this ASAE, in conjunction with ASRE 2405;
- (b) reasonable assurance on historical financial information, the assurance engagement is performed in accordance with this ASAE, in conjunction with ~~applicable~~ Australian Auditing Standards, applied as appropriate:-

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (c) reasonable or limited assurance on pro forma forecast, or prospective financial information, the assurance engagement is performed in accordance with this ASAE, in conjunction with ASAE 3000; and/or
- ~~(d) reasonable or limited assurance on the aggregation of pro forma financial information, the assurance engagement is performed in accordance with this ASAE, in conjunction with ASAE 3000; and/or~~
- ~~(e)~~(d) reasonable or limited assurance on the proper compilation of pro forma financial information, the assurance engagement is performed in accordance with this ASAE, in conjunction with ASAE 3000.

~~10.11.~~ This ASAE does not override the requirements of ASRE 2405, ASAE 3000, Australian Auditing Standards, or Assurance Standards, which may apply in the engagement circumstances. It does not purport to deal with all the considerations that may be relevant in the engagement circumstances.

Effective Date

~~[Deleted by the AUASB. Refer AUS 0.3]~~

Objectives

~~12. The objectives of an assurance engagement involving corporate fundraisings and prospective financial information is to enable the assurance practitioner to express a conclusion regarding the outcome of the measurement of the financial information through a written report (“assurance report”) that clearly conveys either a reasonable or limited assurance conclusion and describes the basis of that conclusion. In conducting an assurance engagement relating to fundraisings or the examination of prospective financial information, the overall objectives of the assurance practitioner are:~~

- ~~(a) to obtain assurance about whether the financial information (or the proper compilation of pro forma financial information) is free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, thereby enabling the assurance practitioner to express an opinion on whether the financial information (or the proper compilation of financial information) is prepared, in all material respects, in~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~accordance with an applicable financial reporting framework; and~~

~~(a)(b) to report on the financial information (or the proper compilation of the pro forma financial information) in accordance with this ASAE.~~

Definitions

~~11.13.~~ For the purposes of this Standard on Assurance Engagements, the following terms have the meanings attributed below:

~~(a) Aggregated financial information means financial information which has been aggregated, classified, summarised, and/or extracted from different source(s) by the responsible party, for the purpose of presenting the aggregated financial information in a specific document. It is ordinarily pro forma financial information that is aggregated.~~

~~(b)(a) Applicable criteria means the benchmarks criteria used by the responsible party in the preparation of financial information included in the document. The criteria⁺ used depends on the nature of the financial information, and may be established by the applicable financial reporting framework, by the recognition and measurement principles contained in Australian Accounting Standards, applicable law or regulation, and/or the accounting policies adopted by the responsible party.~~

~~(c)(b) Applicable financial reporting framework means the financial reporting framework adopted by the responsible party in the preparation of the financial information that is acceptable in view of the nature of the entity, and the objective of the financial information. It may be represented by the recognition and measurement principles contained in Australian Accounting Standards, applicable law or regulation, and/or the accounting policies adopted by the responsible party. In Australia, an applicable financial reporting framework that may be used in preparing historical financial information is represented by the Australian Accounting Standards.~~

⁺ For example, applicable criteria may be the recognition and measurement principles contained in Australian Accounting Standards, applicable law, or regulation.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (d) ~~Assurance engagement means an engagement in which an assurance practitioner expresses a conclusion designed to enhance the degree of confidence of investors and other intended users (other than the responsible party) about the reliability of, the financial information or proper compilation of financial information included in, or to be included in, the document.~~
- (e) ~~Assurance practitioner means a person, or an organisation, whether in public practice, industry, commerce or the public sector, providing assurance services.~~
- (f) ~~Assurance engagement risk means the risk that the assurance practitioner expresses an inappropriate conclusion when the subject matter information is materially misstated.~~
- (c) ~~Assurance report means an written report prepared by an independent assurance practitioner, that may or may not be included in a public document relating to:~~
- (i) ~~If the assurance report is included in a public document, it is~~
- (ii)(i) ~~financial information included in, or to be included in, a public document, relating to a corporate fundraising, or prospective financial information. This is commonly referred to as an Investigating Accountant's Report. Refer paragraph (u) of this ASAE for a definition of a Investigating Accountant's Report; or [PPL] Investigating Accountant's Report means an assurance report prepared by an assurance practitioner on the financial information included, or to be included, in a section of a public document~~
- (iii)
- (iv) ~~If the assurance report is not financial information included in a public document prepared for other purposes, and not included in, or to be included in, a public document issued relating to a corporate fundraising, or prospective financial information, but which is prepared in connection with a~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

fundraising, for distribution to users external to the entity or within the entity, other than the preparers of the financial information, it is ~~This is~~ commonly referred to as a Private Report.

~~[PPL] Prepared in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework means the financial information included in the document, has been prepared and presented by the responsible party on the basis of the recognition and measurement principles contained in the financial reporting framework.~~

~~(v)(ii) [PPL] Private Report means an assurance report prepared by an assurance practitioner that is not included, or to be included, in a public document, but which is prepared in connection with a corporate fundraising, or prospective financial information fundraising, for distribution to intended users external to the entity or within the entity, other than the preparers of the financial information users.~~

(g) —

(h) — Refer paragraph (ff) of this ASAE for a definition of a Private Report.

(i)(d) AUASB Standards means standards issued by the Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (AUASB) comprising:

- (i) Australian Auditing Standards;
- (ii) Standards on Review Engagements; and
- (iii) Standards on Assurance Engagements.

(j)(e) Base financial information means financial information that is unadjusted, and is the starting point to which pro forma ~~transactions and~~ adjustments are applied by the responsible party. Base financial information is ordinarily historical in nature, however, it can also be prospective (for example a profit forecast). It may also be referred to ~~as source or as unadjusted recognition and measurement principles~~ financial information.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~(k)~~ ~~Basis stated means the applicable criteria, together with explanatory notes describing how the applicable criteria have been applied, selected by the responsible party in illustrating to illustrate the effects of the particular the event(s) or transaction(s), being illustrated.~~

~~(f)~~ Best-estimate assumptions ~~-[PPL]~~ means assumptions made by the responsible party as to future events and actions expected to take place at the date the prospective financial information is prepared. Such assumptions must have a “reasonable basis”² and be supportable by appropriate evidence.

~~(m)~~ Refer paragraph (bb) of this ASAE for the definition of “objective reasonable assumptions”.

~~(g)~~ Compiled means the process undertaken by the responsible party to gather, classify, summarise and present financial information to illustrate the impact of a significant event(s) or transaction(s) on base (unadjusted) financial information of an entity, as if the event had occurred or the transaction had been undertaken, at a specified date.

~~(n)~~~~(h)~~ Corporate fundraising means any transaction undertaken to raise debt or equity funds, or issue equity, and/or offer and/or respond to an offer of, cash and/or scrip consideration to effect a transaction through the issuance of a public document, or ~~other document~~non-public document (“the document”). It includes ~~initial~~international public offerings, fundraisings³, takeovers, ~~and~~ schemes of arrangement, or other corporate restructure. ~~[PPL]SecuritiesFundraisings- may include transactions related to means shares in a body, debentures in a body, or or interests in a registered managed investment scheme, but do not cover a derivative or a market traded option.~~⁴

~~(e)~~ _____

² See RG 170 *Prospective Financial Information* issued by the Australian Securities and Investments Commission (ASIC) which applies to prospective financial information included, or to be included in, a public document issued in Australia.

³ See Section 700 of the *Corporations Act 2001*.

⁴ See *Corporations Act 2001*, section 92(3).

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~(p)~~ ~~Disclosure Document means a disclosure document as defined in the Corporations Act 2001.~~

~~(q)~~(i) Engaging party means the body or person(s) that requested the services of the assurance practitioner for the assurance engagement. The engaging party is ordinarily the responsible party, as defined in paragraph (cc) of this ASAE. References in this ASAE to “responsible party” are taken to include engaging party unless otherwise stated.

~~(r)~~(j) Entity means the entity whose securities are being offered for fundraising, ~~or the entity that is undertaking or the subject of a takeover or scheme of arrangement.~~

~~(s)~~(k) Event(s) or transaction(s) means underlying event(s) or transaction(s) relating to a ~~corporate fundraising or prospective financial information~~ that:

(i) is (are) primarily the subject of the document;⁵ or

(ii) is (are) not the subject of the document but ~~whose~~ the effect(s) of which impact the financial information.⁶

~~(t)~~(l) Financial information means ~~financial information of a financial nature prepared by the responsible party to be included in, or to be included in the document, in~~ the form of ~~either~~:

(i) historical financial information; and/or

(ii) pro forma historical financial information; and/or

~~(iii) pro forma forecast; and/or~~

~~(iii)~~ prospective financial information; ~~and/or~~

(iv) ~~pro forma forecast; and~~

prepared on a standalone₁ or aggregated₁ basis.

⁵ For example, a proposed acquisition or divestment.

⁶ For example, a business unit sold by the entity prior to the acquisition of another entity, which is the subject of the public document

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

References in this ASAE to “financial information” are taken to mean the specific financial information on which the assurance practitioner intends to express an assurance conclusion.

- (u) Historical financial information means information expressed in financial terms in relation to a particular entity, which is derived primarily from that entity’s accounting system and relate to events occurring in past time periods or about conditions or circumstances at points in time in the past. It may be audited or unaudited and with or without adjustment(s) ~~(refer below)~~. ~~Historical financial information may be in the form of:~~
- (v) ~~a complete set of financial statements,⁷ for a financial year that forms part of a financial report that has been audited in accordance with the Corporations Act 2001, or for any other purpose;~~
- (w) ~~a complete set of financial statements for a half year that forms part of a financial report that has been audited or reviewed in accordance with the Corporations Act 2001, or for any other purpose; or~~
- (x) ~~a complete set of financial statements prepared for any purpose; or~~
- (y) ~~a single financial statement, or specific components, elements, accounts or items of a financial statement;⁸ or~~
- (z) ~~summary financial statements⁹ derived from, and materially consistent with, an audited or reviewed financial report; or~~

⁷ The concepts and discussions on ~~complete set of the different forms of historical financial information~~ ~~financial statements~~ relevant to an audit engagement are ~~contained defined~~ in ASA 200 *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance with Australian Auditing Standards*, paragraph Aus 13.1, and may be helpful in determining ~~the nature of historical financial information~~ ~~the components of a complete set of financial statements applicable to~~ for an assurance engagement.

⁸ The concepts and discussions on a single financial statement, or specific components, elements, accounts or items of a financial statement relevant to an audit engagement are contained in ASA 805 *Special Considerations Audits of Single Financial Statements, and Specific Elements, Accounts or Items of a Financial Statement*, and may be helpful in determining their composition that is applicable to an assurance engagement. Examples include a statement of financial position including related notes; or an account balance such as receivables.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- ~~(aa)~~ — a set of financial statements prepared in accordance with a financial reporting framework.⁹
- ~~(bb)(m)~~ Adjustments made to historical financial information may relate to the correction of errors and uncertainties, and to ensure consistency with current accounting policies, or applicable Australian Accounting Standards.
- ~~(cc)(n)~~ Hypothetical assumptions means assumptions about future events, and management actions which are not necessarily expected to take place, such as when some entities are in a start-up phase or are considering a major change in the nature of operations. Hypothetical assumptions, by their nature, may not have a reasonable basis, or be supportable by appropriate evidence.
- ~~(dd)~~ — Investigating Accountant's Report means an assurance report prepared by an assurance practitioner on the financial information included, or to be included, in a section of a public document, ordinarily in close proximity to the financial information section, so as to assist investors and other interested third parties in making an informed evaluation of the recent financial performance, financial position, or prospects of the entity.
- ~~(ee)(o)~~ Limited assurance engagement means an assurance engagement where the objective of the assurance practitioner is to reduce the assurance engagement risk to a level that is acceptable in the circumstances of the assurance engagement, but where the risk is greater than for a reasonable assurance engagement. A limited assurance engagement is commonly referred to as a review.
- ~~(ff)~~ — Listing Rules means the rules governing the listing of securities on a prescribed financial market such as the Australian Securities Exchange (ASX).¹¹

⁹ — The concepts and discussions on summary financial statements relevant to an audit engagement are contained in ASA 810 *Engagements to Report on Summary Financial Statements*, paragraph Aus 4.1, and may be helpful in determining their composition that is applicable to an assurance engagement. Examples include summary statement of financial position, statement of comprehensive income, statement of cash flows, statement of changes in equity, related notes and management's assertion statement.

¹⁰ — More examples of historical financial information other than a financial report, relevant to a review engagement are contained in ASRE 2405 *Review of Historical Financial Information Other than a Financial Report* and may be helpful in determining their composition that is applicable to an assurance engagement. An example includes the entity's internal management accounts.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- ~~(gg)~~(p) Management means the person(s) with executive responsibility for the conduct of the operations or individual business units of the entity. For some entities, in some circumstances, management includes some or all of those charged with governance, for example, executive members of a governance board, or an owner-manager.
- ~~(hh)~~(q) Materiality means, ~~in relation to financial information,~~ ~~that information that~~ if certain information is omitted, misstated, or not disclosed, it has the potential to affect decisions of users of the document, or the discharge of accountability by the responsible party of the entity.
- ~~(ii)~~(r) Material inconsistency means information within the document that materially contradicts the financial information ~~that is~~ the subject of the ~~assurance report~~ assurance report.
- ~~(jj)~~(s) Misstatement of fact means information that is incorrectly stated or presented in the document. A material misstatement of fact may undermine the credibility of financial information that is the subject of the ~~assurance report~~ assurance report.
- ~~(kk)~~ ~~Objectively reasonable assumptions means assumptions made by the responsible party as to future events and actions expected to take place at the date the prospective financial information is prepared. Such assumptions must have a “reasonable basis”^{11,12} and be supportable by appropriate evidence. They are commonly referred to as best estimate assumptions.~~
- ~~(ll)~~(t) ~~Other Non-public~~ document means a document provided to internal or external parties in relation to a ~~corporate fundraising, or prospective financial information~~ fundraising, which is not included in, or to be included in, a public document. References to “the document” in this ASAE are taken to include a non-public document, unless otherwise stated.

¹¹ See the ASX website at <http://www.asx.com.au> for a complete set of the ASX Listing Rules.

¹² See RG 170 *Prospective Financial Information* issued by the Australian Securities and Investments Commission (ASIC) which applies to prospective financial information included, or to be included in, a public document issued in Australia.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (mm) — ~~Other information means information of a financial or non-financial nature included in the document that is not the subject of the assurance report.~~
- (nn) — ~~Prepared in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework means the financial information included in the document, has been prepared and presented by the responsible party on the basis of the recognition and measurement principles contained in the financial reporting framework.~~
- (oo) — ~~Private Report means an assurance report prepared by an assurance practitioner that is not included, or to be included, in a public document, but which is prepared in connection with a corporate fundraising, or prospective financial informationa fundraising, for distribution to intended users external to the entity or within the entity, other than the preparers of the financial informationusers.~~
- (pp) — ~~Pro forma adjustments means adjustments applied to (unadjusted) base financial information based on the responsible party's party's stated basis.:-~~
- (qq) — ~~to illustrate the impact of a significant event(s) or transaction(s), as if the event had occurred, or the transaction had been undertaken, at an earlier date selected for the purposes of the illustration;~~
- (rr) — ~~if the entity is being acquired, adjustments to make its basis of preparation of the financial information consistent with the applicable financial reporting framework (including accounting policies) of the acquiring entity;~~
- (ss) — ~~to eliminate the effects of unusual or non-recurring transactions that are not part of the normal operations of the entity;~~
- (tt) — ~~to reflect a transaction (other than the underlying transaction that is the subject of the document,) that occurred part way through the period covered by the financial information (for example, an business acquisition part way through the time period);~~
- (uu) — ~~other adjustments to allow for a "like for like" comparison across particular time periods; and/orAdjustments made to~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~historical financial information may relate to the correction of errors and uncertainties, and to ensure consistency with current accounting policies, or applicable Australian Accounting Standards~~

~~(vv) —~~

~~(ww) —~~

~~(xx)(u) to reflect post financial reporting period end transactions.~~

~~Adjustments must be made with a reasonable basis and supported by appropriate evidence.~~

~~(yy)(v) Pro forma financial information means base ~~(unadjusted)~~ financial information that is adjusted to illustrate the impact of event(s) or transaction(s) on that base financial information, as if those event(s) or transaction(s) had occurred/been undertaken at an earlier date, a later date, or not at all for pro forma adjustments and. — Pro forma financial information is prepared on a stated basis of preparation by the responsible party, which is— prepared in accordance with an applicable financial reporting framework, subject to assumptions relevant to the fundraising. Pro forma financial information may be either:~~

- ~~(i) pro forma historical ~~financial information has which has~~ base financial information that is historical in nature, adjusted for ~~significant subsequent events and other matters related to a corporate fundraising~~ pro forma adjustments ; or¹³~~
- ~~(ii) pro forma forecast ~~financial information has which has~~ base financial information that is either a forecast; or, a mix of historical and forecast financial information; adjusted for pro forma adjustments.^{14 15}~~

¹³ For example, an entity acquired another entity effective 31 January 20X1. The entity prepared its pro forma historical financial information as at 31 December 20X0 and for the period to 31 December 20X1, which included pro forma adjustments to show the effects of the acquisition, as if the acquisition had occurred on 31 December 20X0.

¹⁴ For example, if the financial information is prepared part way through the financial period, it may include part historical financial information, and part forecast financial information for the remainder of the financial period, adjusted by pro forma adjustments.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

(w) Properly compiled means when the responsible party has in all material respects, performed the compilation of pro forma financial information on the basis stated.

(zz) ~~the process undertaken by the responsible party to gather, classify, summarise and present financial information to illustrate the impact of a significant event(s) or transaction(s) on base (unadjusted) financial information of the entity as if the event had occurred or the transaction had been undertaken, at a specified date.~~

~~(aaa)(x) Prospective financial information means financial information of a predictive character, prepared based on assumptions (applicable criteria) made by the responsible party about future events that may occur in the future, and/or on expected actions by the entity. It is commonly referred to as a “forecast”. Prospective financial information often illustrates the expected consequences if the events or actions were to occur (a “what if” scenario) as of the date the financial information is prepared. Prospective financial information is prepared based on the applicable criteria of the responsible party. Prospective financial information may be in the form of either a forecast, a projection, or a combination of both.~~

(i) ~~Forecast or cast, which is means prospective financial information prepared on the basis of the responsible party’s best-estimate assumptions as to future events, which are expected to take place on the dates described, and the actions they expected to be taken as at of the date the financial information is prepared. Given that the responsible party ordinarily reports and measures actual results against this forecast, it is commonly referred to as a “director’s statutory forecast”;~~ or

¹⁵ For example, an entity has acquired another entity effective 31 January 20X1. As a consequence of the acquisition, the entity is expected to divest on 30 April 20X1 a business unit whose operations are not consistent with the combined entities’ business strategies and operations. The entity presented the impact of these two transactions as if they had occurred on 1 January 20X1 on its forecast earnings for the half year ending 30 June 20X1 in the form of a pro forma forecast income statement for the same period. The base financial information of the pro forma forecast was the forecast earnings of the entity for the half year ending 30 June 20X1. The and the pro forma adjustments include adjustments (a) to remove the forecast earnings of the business unit to be divested, and (b) to incorporate the forecast earnings of the acquired entity for the half year.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- ~~(ii)~~ ~~P~~projection¹⁶ means prospective financial information which is prepared on the basis of ~~hy-~~
- ~~(iii)~~ ~~h~~ypothetical assumptions; or
- ~~(iv)~~ ~~a~~ mixture of best-estimate and hypothetical assumptions.
- ~~(v)~~~~(ii)~~ ~~Combined Forecast and Projection~~ means prospective financial information prepared on the basis of a forecast and an projection. An example is a one year forecast plus a five year projection.
- ~~(bbb)~~ ~~Public document~~ means a disclosure document ~~or other documentation~~ issued to ~~existing or prospective~~ shareholders, unit holders, security holders or holders of a relevant interest in the entity ~~or another entity, (or which is provided to management of the entity)~~ relating to the entity's securities, ~~or other securities of another entity, on which it is intended will be~~ ~~on which it is intended will be made~~ an investment decision. The following are examples of public documents:
- ~~(ccc)~~~~(v)~~ ~~When an offer of securities needs disclosure to investors,~~¹⁷ ~~the entity may use the following type of public documents:~~
- (i) Prospectus is a full public document used in fundraisings prepared by an entity that is a corporation in accordance with relevant sections of the *Corporations Act 2001*.¹⁸
- (ii) Short-Form Prospectus is a prospectus that contains references to materials previously lodged with Australian Securities and Investments Commission (ASIC), instead of including in the body of the prospectus the relevant information discussed in such materials.¹⁹ Investors are

¹⁶ See RG 170 for more information on prospective financial information prepared in the form of a projection, which is applicable to financial information included in a public document. In Australia, a public document that includes a projection supported by material hypothetical assumptions is unlikely to have reasonable grounds and as such is ordinarily not permitted to be included in a public document.

¹⁷ See Section 706 of the *Corporations Act 2001*.

¹⁸ See Sections 710, 711, and 713 of the *Corporations Act 2001*.

¹⁹ See Section 712 of the *Corporations Act 2001*.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~entitled to receive a copy of the materials that have been lodged with ASIC if they request them.~~

~~(ii)(iii)~~ Low document offering.

~~(iii)(iv)~~ Profile Statement is a brief statement that may be sent out with offers, with ASIC's approval, instead of a prospectus.²⁰ ~~In such a circumstance, the prospectus is still required to be prepared and lodged with ASIC. Investors are entitled to receive a copy of the prospectus if they request it.~~

~~(iv)(v)~~ Offer Information (Scheme) Statement is a document that is a document that may be used instead of a prospectus under certain if it meets the criteria set by the under the Corporations Act 2001.²¹ ~~It may also be referred to as a scheme document.~~

~~(ddd)(z)~~ Product Disclosure Statement (PDS) is a type of document used in fundraisings where the entity is a trust or other type of managed investment scheme.

~~(eee)(aa)~~ Reasonable assurance engagement means an assurance engagement where the objective of the assurance practitioner is to reduce the assurance engagement risk to an acceptably low level in the circumstances of the assurance engagement as the basis for a positive form of expression of the assurance practitioner's conclusion. ~~A reasonable assurance engagement is commonly referred to as an audit.~~

~~(fff)(bb)~~ Relevant Date means the time period after the issuance of the assurance report, and up to and including as applicable:

- (i) the allotment date;
- (ii) the effective date of the relevant proposed fundraising;
- (iii) the implementation date of the relevant proposed merger transaction; or

²⁰ See Sections 705 and 721 of the *Corporations Act 2001*.

²¹ See Section 709 of the *Corporations Act 2001* for the criteria as to when an Offer Information Statement may be used instead of a prospectus.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

(iv) in the case of a scheme of arrangement, the date of the shareholders/unit-holders meeting to vote on the scheme.

~~(eee)~~(cc) Responsible party means ~~ordinarily~~ those charged with governance of the entity (ordinarily the Board of Directors), who are also responsible for the preparation and issuance of the financial information included in ~~the~~ document. It may mean the management of the entity in circumstances where the assurance practitioner has been required to provide assurance to those charged with governance in relation to financial information prepared by management. The responsible party may also be referred to as the engaging party, as defined in paragraph (i) of this ASAE.

~~(hhh)~~ Securities means shares in a body, debentures in a body, or interests in a registered managed investment scheme, but do not cover a derivative or a market traded option.²²

~~(iii)~~(dd) Scheme of arrangement means an arrangement undertaken in accordance with Part 5.1 of the *Corporations Act 2001*.

~~(jjj)~~ Source financial information means base financial information. Refer paragraph (i) of this ASAE for the definition.

~~(kkk)~~(ee) Stated basis of preparation means the recognition and measurement basis on which pro forma financial information has been prepared.

~~(lll)~~(ff) Subsequent events means events occurring between the date of the assurance practitioner's work on the financial information being completed and the issuance of the ~~assurance report~~ assurance report; and facts that become known to the assurance practitioner after the date of the assurance report ~~and prior to the relevant date~~. Subsequent events may also be known as "new circumstances".

~~(mmm)~~(gg) Third parties means parties who will, or are intended to, receive the ~~assurance report~~ assurance report, and who are not the responsible party of the financial information, including those charged with governance (where they are not the responsible party of the financial

²² See *Corporations Act 2001*, section 92(3).

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

information); management (where they are not the responsible party of the financial information); banks and other financial institutions.

~~(nnn)~~ Those charged with governance means the person(s) or organisation(s) (for example, a corporate trustee) with responsibility for overseeing the strategic direction of the entity and obligations related to the accountability of the entity. This includes overseeing the financial reporting process.

~~(ooo)~~(hh) Takeover means the acquisition of control of listed or unlisted entities conducted in accordance with Chapter 6 of the *Corporations Act 2001*.

Requirements

Ethical Requirements

~~12.~~14. The assurance practitioner shall comply with relevant ethical requirements, including independence, in accordance with ASA 102.²³

Quality Control

15. The assurance practitioner shall establish and maintain a system of quality control in accordance with ASQC 1.²⁴

Professional Scepticism

16. The assurance practitioner shall plan and perform the engagement with professional scepticism, recognising that circumstances may exist that cause the financial information, or the proper compilation of the pro forma financial information, to be materially misstated.

Professional Judgement

~~13.~~17. The assurance practitioner shall exercise professional judgement in planning and performing assurance engagements involving financial information, or the proper compilation of financial information, relating to a corporate fundraising.

²³ See ASA 102 *Compliance with Ethical Requirements when Performing Audits, Reviews and Other Assurance Engagements*.

²⁴ See ASQC 1 *Quality Control for Firms that Perform Audits and Reviews of Financial Reports and Other Financial Information, and Other Assurance Engagements*.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Complying with Standards that are relevant to the engagement

~~14.18.~~ The assurance practitioner shall comply with this ASAE₂ and other AUASB Standards ~~relevant~~applied as appropriate to the engagement.

~~15.19.~~ The assurance practitioner shall not represent compliance with this ASAE₂ unless the assurance practitioner has complied with the requirements of both this ASAE₂ and other AUASB Standards ~~relevant~~applied as appropriate to the engagement.

Inability to Comply with the Requirements of this ASAE or other
AUASB Standards

~~16.20.~~ Where in rare and exceptional circumstances, factors outside the assurance practitioner's control prevent the assurance practitioner from complying with an essential procedure contained within a relevant requirement²⁵ in this ASAE, the assurance practitioner shall:

- (a) if possible, perform appropriate alternative procedures; and
- (b) document in the working papers:
 - (i) the circumstances surrounding the inability to comply;
 - (ii) the reasons for the inability to comply; and
- (c) justification of how alternative procedures achieve the objective(s) of the requirement.

~~17.21.~~ When the assurance practitioner is unable to perform the appropriate alternative procedures, the assurance practitioner shall consider the implications for the assurance engagement.

²⁵ The concepts and discussion on which requirements are relevant in the circumstances of the audit engagement are contained in ASA 200 *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance with Australian Auditing Standards* (paragraphs 22 and Aus 23.1), and may be helpful in determining how to ensure compliance with relevant requirements for assurance engagements related to a corporate fundraising.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Historical financial information

22. Paragraphs 23 to 76 of this ASAE deal with special considerations in an assurance engagement related to a fundraising that involves historical financial information.

Assurance Engagement Acceptance

Preconditions for Acceptance

23. The assurance practitioner shall prior to agreeing the terms of the assurance engagement proposed by the responsible party, determine whether the applicable financial reporting framework applicable criteria for the preparation of the historical financial information is acceptable.

~~18.24.~~ The assurance practitioner shall and obtain agreement from the responsible party that they it: (Ref: Para. A1-Error! Reference source not found.)

- (a) ~~that it~~ understands and accepts the terms of the assurance engagement, including the assurance practitioner's reporting responsibilities and type of assurance to be expressed;
- (b) ~~that it~~ acknowledges and understands its responsibility for:
 - (i) the preparation of the historical financial information in accordance with the applicable criteria;
 - (ii) the selection, development and adequate disclosure of the applicable criteria in the document,
 - (iii) the disclosure of the time period covered by the historical financial information;
 - (iv) the preparation of the document²⁶ in which the financial information will be presented;
 - (v) such internal control as the responsible party determines is necessary to enable the preparation

²⁶ The *Corporations Act 2001* places specific requirements on directors in relation to the preparation of public documents, including presentation of financial information included therein. For example, see section 92(3).

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

of the financial information that is free from material misstatement; and

- (c) ~~that it~~ will provide the assurance practitioner with:
- (i) ~~unrestricted~~ access to all information relevant to the historical financial information;
 - ~~(ii)(i)~~ ~~any additional information~~ requested by the assurance practitioner;
 - ~~(iii)(ii)~~ unrestricted access to those within the entity from whom the assurance practitioner determines it necessary to obtain evidence; ~~or the including where appropriate, the~~ responsible party's ~~third party~~ experts; and
 - ~~(iv)(iii)~~ a written representation letter covering all matters requested by the assurance practitioner in relation to the engagement within the timeframe required.

Other Factors Affecting Engagement Acceptance

~~19-25.~~ The assurance practitioner shall accept the engagement only when:
(Ref: Para. A6)

- (a) on the basis of preliminary knowledge of the assurance engagement circumstances, nothing has come to the assurance practitioner's attention to indicate that:
 - (i) the requirements of the relevant ethical principles described in ASA 102, will not be satisfied;
 - (ii) the applicable criteria to be applied in the preparation of the historical financial information is unacceptable ~~or misleading for its intended purpose; and~~
- (b) the basis upon which the engagement is to be performed has been agreed through establishing that the preconditions, as stated in paragraph 24 of this ASAE, for an assurance engagement are present;
- ~~(b)(c)~~ the assurance practitioner has a rational purpose;
(Ref: Para. A6)

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~(e)~~(d) the assurance practitioner is satisfied that the responsible party ~~possess~~ possesses the necessary professional competencies;

~~(d)~~(e) the assurance practitioner has the capabilities, competence and necessary qualifications to perform the engagement; and

~~(e)~~(f) the assurance practitioner believes that the ~~assurance report~~ assurance report will be used for its intended purpose.

~~20-26.~~ If the preconditions ~~for the engagement for the assurance engagement or other factors affecting engagement acceptance~~, as set out in paragraph 23 ~~and paragraph 25~~ of this ASAE are not present, the assurance practitioner shall discuss the matter with the responsible party. If changes cannot be made to meet the preconditions, the assurance practitioner shall not accept the engagement as an assurance engagement unless required by applicable law or regulation.

~~21-27.~~ The assurance practitioner shall agree to perform any non-assurance services ~~in connection with the assurance engagement~~ only in accordance with relevant ethical requirements and applicable professional standards,²⁷ having particular regard to independence. (Ref: Para. A8)

Agreeing on the Terms of the Assurance Engagement

~~22-28.~~ The assurance practitioner shall agree the terms of the assurance engagement with the responsible party in writing. (Ref: Para. A9-A10)

~~23-29.~~ The agreed terms of the assurance engagement shall include:
(Ref: Para. A10-A14)

- (a) the objective and scope of the assurance engagement, including:
 - (i) the assurance practitioner's understanding of the purpose of the assurance engagement;
 - (ii) confirmation that the assurance practitioner will conduct the engagement in accordance with this ASAE;

²⁷ See APES 110 *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants*, (November 2009) issued by the Accounting Professional and Ethical Standards Board.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (iii) the nature, source, time period covered, and purpose, of the historical financial information;
 - (iv) a statement that the assurance practitioner is not responsible for the preparation of the historical financial information;
 - (v) the proposed wording of the assurance opinion and type of assurance (limited or reasonable) that is expected to be provided ~~on the historical financial information;~~
 - (vi) a statement that the engagement cannot be relied upon to identify fraud(s), error(s), illegal action(s) or other irregularities that may exist within the entity;
- (b) a summary of assurance procedures to be performed;
 - (c) the responsibilities of the assurance practitioner, including:
 - (i) compliance with relevant ethical requirements, including independence;
 - (ii) performing assurance procedures on the financial information to determine if it has been prepared in accordance with the applicable criteria;
 - (iii) issuing a written ~~report~~ assurance report for the intended purpose;
 - (iv) where applicable, providing consent to the responsible party to include the assurance practitioner's name and assurance report in the document;
 - (d) the responsibilities of the responsible party including those set out in paragraph 23 of this ASAE; and
 - (e) such other terms and conditions that the assurance practitioner determines are appropriate in the assurance engagement circumstances.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Changes in the Terms of the Assurance Engagement (Ref: Para. A15-A16)

- ~~24.~~^{30.} The assurance practitioner shall not agree to a change in the terms of the assurance engagement where there is ~~not~~^{no} reasonable justification for doing so. If such a change is made, the assurance practitioner shall not disregard evidence that was obtained prior to the change.
- ~~25.~~^{31.} If the terms of the assurance engagement are to change, the assurance practitioner and the responsible party shall agree on, and record the new terms of the assurance engagement in an engagement letter or other suitable form of written agreement.
- ~~26.~~^{32.} If the assurance practitioner is unable to agree to a change in ~~of~~ the terms of the assurance engagement, and is not permitted by the responsible party to continue the original assurance engagement, the assurance practitioner shall:
- (a) withdraw from the assurance engagement where possible under applicable law or regulation; and
 - (b) determine whether there is any obligation, either contractual or otherwise, to report the circumstances to other parties, such as those charged with governance, owners, or regulators.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Planning the Assurance Engagement

- ~~27.~~ The assurance practitioner shall plan the assurance engagement in accordance with ~~this ASAE, and:~~
- ~~28.~~ ASRE 2405, for reviews of historical financial information; or
- ~~29-33.~~ ASRE 3000, for assurance procedures other than reviews or audits of historical financial information; and
- (a) ~~this ASAE, for other assurance engagement work performed on the financial information.~~

Planning Activities

- ~~30-34.~~ The assurance practitioner shall ~~use~~ ~~exercise use~~ professional judgement ~~to into~~ determining the nature, timing, and extent of assurance procedures to perform on the ~~historical~~ financial information, in order to achieve the engagement objectives. (Ref: Para. X)
- ~~31-35.~~ The assurance practitioner's planning considerations shall include: (Ref: Para. A18)
- (a) ~~what the agreed terms of engagement required the assurance practitioner to opine on;~~
- (b) ~~setting the scope, timing and direction of the assurance engagement;~~
- (a) ~~what the agreed terms of engagement require the assurance practitioner to opine on;~~
- (b) ~~setting the scope, timing and direction of the assurance engagement;~~
- (c) ~~the type of underlying event(s) or transaction(s) that require the preparation of the historical financial information;~~
- (d) ~~obtaining an , and the extent of understanding required of the nature of the entity, sufficient to be able to evaluate whether the responsible party has identified and applied all suitable criteria for the including internal control, relevant to the preparation of the historical financial information;~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (i) —
- ~~(e)~~(e) any previous dealings with the entity, including whether the assurance practitioner has audited or reviewed prior period financial report(s);
- obtaining an understanding of the historical financial information including the :
- ~~(d)~~ including its nature, type, source, time period covered, adjustments made, applicable criteria used, and its intended use and the extent to which it is affected by the responsible party's judgements, sufficient to design and perform assurance procedures;
- ~~(f)~~
- ~~(e)~~(g) whether, based on preliminary knowledge obtained through the planning process, the applied criteria used in the preparation of the historical financial information has been incorrectly applied; any previous dealings with the entity, including whether the assurance practitioner has audited or reviewed prior period financial report(s);
- ~~(h)~~ obtaining an understanding of the other information included in the document, to assess whether it is consistent with the whether the historical financial information;
- ~~(f)~~(i) -whether the assurance practitioner will need to contact the entity's auditor or other assurance practitioner in order to understand what type of audit or review opinion was expressed on the most recent financial report;
- ~~(j)~~ understanding the requirements of any applicable law or regulation;²⁸
- ~~(g)~~ was previously audited or reviewed by another assurance practitioner, and if so, what type of audit or review opinion was expressed;

²⁸ Prospective financial information included in a public document under the *Corporations Act 2001* is required to be based on reasonable grounds²⁸ to be considered not misleading. See section 728(2) and section 769C of the *Corporations Act 2001*. See ASIC's RG 170 *Prospective Financial Information*, paragraphs 170.17 and 170.20. See ASIC's RG 170 *Prospective Financial Information*, for further guidance on what constitutes "reasonable grounds", as well as some non-exhaustive examples of indicative factors that may suggest or demonstrate reasonable grounds.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (i) ~~the nature of the applicable criteria used whether, based on preliminary knowledge obtained through the planning process, the applicable criteria used in the preparation of the historical financial information is not misleading for its intended purpose; (Ref: Para. A22)~~
- ~~(h)(k) setting materiality levels for planning and performing the engagement and evaluating the likelihood of whether the historical financial information is free of material misstatements;²⁹~~
- ~~(l) considering assurance engagement risk;~~
~~evaluating~~
- ~~(i)(m) whether the assurance practitioner will need to contact the entity's auditor or other assurance practitioner;~~
- ~~(j)(n) whether the use of (an) expert(s) is/are required; and~~
- ~~(o) the expertise and experience of those persons preparing the historical financial information;~~
- ~~(p) the engagement team resources required for specifie-the engagement areas and how they will be managed, directed and supervised; and;~~
- ~~(k) obtaining an understanding of internal control over the process used to prepare the historical financial information.~~
~~;~~
- ~~(l) whether the use of an expert(s) is/are required;~~
- ~~(m) setting materiality levels for evaluating whether the financial information is free of material misstatement;³⁰~~
- ~~(n) assurance engagement risk; and~~

²⁹ The concepts and discussions on materiality in an audit engagement are contained in *ASA 320 Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit* and may be helpful in determining the materiality levels for corporate fundraising engagements.

³⁰ The concepts and discussions on materiality in an audit engagement are contained in *ASA 320 Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit* and may be helpful in determining the materiality levels for corporate fundraising engagements.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~(q) in the case of a reasonable assurance engagement, obtaining an understanding of internal control relevant to the preparation of the financial information.~~

~~The assurance practitioner shall exercise professional judgement in designing and performing procedures in order to obtain sufficient appropriate evidence on the historical financial information which to base an assurance conclusion in accordance with the engagement circumstances. (Ref: Para. A24_A25)~~

Reliance on the work of another Assurance Practitioner (Ref: Para. A23)

~~32.36.~~ If the assurance practitioner plans to place reliance³¹ on historical financial information that has been audited or reviewed by another assurance practitioner, the assurance practitioner shall:

- ~~(a)~~ consider the scope, professional competence, work performed and conclusion expressed by the other assurance practitioner;
- ~~(b)~~ determine whether there is a need to perform additional procedures on the historical financial information; ~~and~~
- ~~(c)~~ be satisfied that the work is adequate for the assurance practitioner's purposes; and

consider if the other assurance practitioner has provided written acknowledgement that the assurance practitioner is able to rely on the work performed; or, if not, what additional procedures, if any, are required for the assurance practitioner's purposes in order to place reliance on the other assurance practitioner's work.

~~37.~~ Where the other assurance practitioner's opinion was modified, determine the implications for the assurance engagement:

- ~~(a)~~ consider the assurance practitioner's ability to undertake the engagement in accordance with the agreed terms; and
- ~~(e)(b)~~ consider the potential impact, if any, on the assurance procedures to be performed.

³¹ The concepts and discussions on auditor's using the work of other experts are contained in ASA 620 *Using the Work of an Auditor's Expert* and may be helpful in determining the extent of reliance.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

33. ~~Where the other assurance practitioner's opinion was modified:~~
- (a) ~~consider the assurance practitioner's ability to undertake the engagement in accordance with the agreed terms; and~~
 - (b) ~~consider the potential impact, if any, on the assurance procedures to be performed.~~

Performing the Engagement

Assurance Procedures

34. ~~The assurance practitioner shall use professional judgement to design and perform procedures in order to obtain sufficient appropriate evidence on the financial information which to base an assurance conclusion in accordance with the engagement circumstances. (Ref: Para. A22-A23)~~
- 35-38. ~~The assurance practitioner shall use professional judgement to design and perform procedures in order to obtain sufficient appropriate evidence on the historical financial information, on which to base either a:~~
- (a) ~~limited assurance nature~~ limited assurance opinion on historical financial information in accordance with this ASAE and ASRE 2405 and this ASAE; (Ref: Para. A28) or (Ref: Para. A25)
 - (b) ~~reasonable assurance nature~~ reasonable assurance opinion on historical financial information in accordance with this ASAE and ASAE 3000 and this ASAE.
39. The assurance practitioner's assessment of risk may change during the course of the assurance engagement as additional evidence is obtained. In circumstances where the assurance practitioner obtains evidence from performing further assurance procedures, or if new information is obtained, either of which is inconsistent with the evidence on which the assurance practitioner originally based the assessment, the assurance practitioner shall revise the assessment and modify the further planned assurance procedures accordingly. (Ref: Para. 0)
- 36-40. ~~The assurance practitioner shall remain alert throughout the engagement for any event(s), condition(s), transaction(s), or error(s) that may:~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (a) cast doubt over the reliability, accuracy, or completeness of the information used as evidence for the historical financial information; and/or
- (b) require changes or additions to the assurance procedures to resolve.

Using the Work of the Responsible Party's an Expert

~~37.41.~~ If information to be used as evidence has been prepared using the work of the responsible party's expert, the assurance practitioner shall use professional judgement to evaluate the significance of that expert's work for the assurance practitioner's purposes. When using the work of an expert, the assurance practitioner shall:

- ~~(a)~~ evaluate whether the expert has the necessary competence, capabilities, and objectivity and independence of that expert for the assurance practitioner's purposes;
- ~~(b)~~ evaluate the expert's independence;
- ~~(c)~~ obtain a sufficient understanding of the field of expertise of the expert in order to evaluate the expert's work of the expert;
- ~~(d)~~ (c) evaluate the appropriateness of that expert's work as evidence for the purpose of the assurance determine if the nature, scope and objectives of the expert's work are adequate for the purposes of the assurance engagement, and in accordance with applicable AUASB Standard engagements;³² (Ref: Para. A28)
- ~~(e)~~ (d) determine if the expert's work impacts on the assurance practitioner's conclusion; and
- (e) where applicable, determine if the expert has consented to the inclusion of the expert's report in the document.

³² See ASRE 2405 *Review of Historical Financial Information Other than a Financial Report*, paragraph 28; ASAE 3000 *Assurance Engagements Other than Audits or Reviews of Historical Financial Information*, paragraphs 47-55, and ASA 620 *Using the Work of an Auditor's Expert*.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Using the work of the Assurance Practitioner's Expert

42. If information to be used as evidence has been prepared using the work of the assurance practitioners' expert, the auditor shall evaluate, to the extent necessary, having regard to the significant of that expert's work for the assurance practitioners purposes:
- (a) evaluate the competence, capabilities, and objectivity of that expert;
 - (b) obtain an understanding of the work of the expert;
 - (c) evaluate the appropriateness of that expert's work as evidence for the purposes of the assurance engagement;³³
 - (d) determine if the expert's work impacts on the assurance practitioner's conclusion; and
 - (f)(e) where applicable, determine if the expert has consented to the inclusion of the expert's report in the document.

Adjustments identified by the Assurance Practitioner

- ~~38.~~43. When during the conduct of the assurance engagement a matter comes to the assurance practitioner's attention that causes the assurance practitioner to believe that it is necessary to make a material adjustment to the historical financial information for it to be prepared in accordance with the applicable criteria, the assurance practitioner shall communicate this matter as soon as practicable to the responsible party. (Ref: Para. A30)
- ~~39.~~44. Where the responsible party refuses to make the adjustment, the assurance practitioner shall determine the implications for the engagement ~~for the assurance engagement~~ and the assurance report. ~~(Ref: Para. 0)~~

Evaluating the Sufficiency and Appropriateness of Evidence Obtained (Ref: Para. A31)~~(0)~~

40. ~~—~~ The assurance practitioner shall evaluate whether they have obtained sufficient appropriate evidence³⁴ on which to express an assurance

³³ See ASAE 3000 *Assurance Engagements Other than Audits or Reviews of Historical Financial Information*, paragraphs 47-55, and ASA 620 *Using the Work of an Auditor's Expert*.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

conclusion on the historical financial information, ~~in the context of the assurance engagement, including whether that historical financial information in the document:~~

41. ~~is materially misstated; and~~

42.45. ~~adequately refers to, or describes, the applicable criteria.~~³⁵

Other Information included in the document (Ref: Para. ~~A1-0X~~)

43.46. When the document containing the historical financial information and assurance report includes other information, the assurance practitioner shall request from the responsible party a copy of that document and read its entire contents to identify any material inconsistencies ~~with~~, or material misstatements of fact ~~in relation to~~, ~~with~~ the historical financial information.

44.47. If the assurance practitioner:

- (a) identifies a material inconsistency between the other information and the historical financial information; or
- (b) becomes aware of a material misstatement of fact in that other information that is related to the historical financial information; or
- (c) identifies a potentially misleading or deceptive statement in relation to the historical financial information;

the assurance practitioner ~~discusses shall discuss~~ the matter(s) identified with the responsible party and ~~shall takes~~ further action as appropriate, including determining the implications ~~for the engagement~~ for the assurance engagement and the assurance report.

48. ~~If the assurance practitioner and the responsible party agrees agree to a revision, the assurance practitioner should request an updated copy of the document in order to ensure the revisions have been made.~~

49. ~~If the responsible party refuses to make the revisions, the assurance practitioner considers whether to:~~

³⁴ The concepts and discussions on the sufficiency and appropriates of evidence related to an audit engagement are contained in ASA 500 *Audit Evidence* and may be helpful in evaluating the evidence for corporate fundraising engagements.

³⁵ The concepts and discussions on the sufficiency and appropriates of evidence related to an audit engagement are contained in ASA 500 *Audit Evidence* and may be helpful in evaluating the evidence for corporate fundraising engagements.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (a) obtaining legal advice on the appropriate course of the action for the assurance practitioner;
- (b) including in the assurance report an Other Matter paragraph³⁶ that describes the material inconsistency and/or misstatement of fact;
- (c) withdrawing consent for the responsible party to include the assurance report in the document; and/or
- (d) withdrawing from the assurance engagement, where the withdrawal is possible under applicable law or regulation.

Going Concern Considerations (Ref: Para. A34-A37)

- 45-50. The assurance practitioner shall perform an determine if an assessment of the entity's ability to continue as a going concern, unless in the assurance engagement circumstances, the assurance practitioner determines that such an assessment is not considerations is relevant to the assurance engagement.³⁷
- 46-51. ~~If~~ The assurance practitioner ~~determines that an assessment of the entity's going concern is relevant, the assurance practitioner shall perform such an assessment in order to~~ obtain sufficient appropriate evidence regarding the appropriateness of the responsible party's use of the going concern assumption in the preparation of the historical ~~historical f~~inancial information.
- 47-52. If the assurance practitioner concludes the entity is not a going concern, the assurance practitioner shall consider the implications for the engagement ~~for the assurance engagement~~ and the assurance report.

³⁶ The concepts and discussion on the use of an Other Matter paragraph relevant to an audit engagement are contained in ASA 706 Emphasis of Matter Paragraphs and Other Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report, paragraphs 8-Aus 8.1, and may be helpful in determining its form, content and location in the Investigating Accountant's Report applicable to an assurance engagement.

³⁷ The concepts and discussions on the going concern assessment relevant to an financial report audit engagement are contained in ASA 570 Going Concern, and may be helpful in performing a going concern assessment in an assurance engagement relating to financial information. Australian Accounting Standard AASB 101 *Presentation of Financial Statements*, paragraphs 25-26 contains relevant guidance on the going concern assessment.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Consideration of Events up to the date of the Assurance Report

(Ref: Para. A38)

~~48-53.~~ The assurance practitioner shall consider the impact of any event, transaction, or error of which they become aware, that may materially impact the historical financial information, for the time period up to and including the date of the assurance report.

~~49.~~ The assurance practitioner shall discuss with the responsible party any such event(s), ~~and/or~~ transaction(s), ~~or error~~ identified in paragraph 53 of this ASAE, with a view to concluding as to whether the effect on the historical financial information is material, and needs to be adjusted ~~for~~ and/or disclosed in:

~~50.~~ the historical financial information;

~~51.~~ the document; and/or

~~52-54.~~ the assurance report.

Consideration of Events Identified after the date of the Assurance Report

(Ref: Para. A39-A1)

~~53-55.~~ If the assurance practitioner becomes aware of events, transactions or errors after the date of the issuance of the assurance report and before the relevant date that may have caused the assurance practitioner to amend the assurance report had the assurance practitioner known of them at the date of that assurance report, the assurance practitioner shall:

- (a) discuss such events and/or transactions with the responsible party; and
- (b) consider what further action is appropriate in the engagement circumstances.

~~54-56.~~ The assurance practitioner shall revoke any consent previously ~~agreed to or~~ provided, to include the assurance report in the document, if the matter(s) referred to in paragraph's 1 ~~and/or~~ 55 of this ASAE are not, in the assurance practitioner's judgement, appropriately addressed by the responsible party.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Written Representations

~~55-57.~~ ~~Where the assurance practitioner has not already received written representations from the responsible party in respect of the following matters, †~~The assurance practitioner shall request ~~a~~ written representations ~~letter~~ from the responsible party at the completion of the assurance engagement containing the following: (Ref: Para. A1-A42)

- (a) an acceptance of the assurance engagement letter terms and conditions;
- (b) an acknowledgement that the assurance practitioner's engagement has been conducted in accordance with this ASAE;
- (c) an acknowledgement that the engagement terms includes ~~d~~ the type of engagement the assurance practitioner ~~would~~ will conduct and the type of assurance conclusion that ~~would-will~~ be expressed;
- ~~(d)~~ an acknowledgement of the intended use of the historical financial information;
- ~~(e)~~ confirmation that the going concern basis of preparation of the historical financial information is appropriate in the document;
- ~~(f)~~ confirmation that there are no material changes to be made to the historical financial information between the date of the assurance report and the relevant date;
- ~~(d)~~~~(g)~~ an ~~an~~ acknowledgement ~~of~~ by the responsible party ~~for~~ the ~~of the following 's~~ responsibilities ~~for~~:
 - ~~(i)~~ the preparation and presentation of the historical financial information for the periods stated in accordance with the applicable criteria;
 - ~~(ii)~~ determining the applicable time periods to be covered by the historical financial information;†
 - ~~(i)~~ he selection, preparation and presentation of the historical financial information based on the applicable criteria;

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- ~~(iii)~~ the preparation and issuance of the document in which the historical financial information is included; ~~in accordance with any applicable laws or regulation;~~
- ~~(iv)~~ all other information that is not the subject of the assurance engagement, but which is included in the document;
- ~~(ii)(v)~~ complying with the requirements of all applicable laws or regulations;
- ~~(iii)~~ all other information that is not the subject of the engagement, but which is included in the document;
- ~~(iv)~~ for disclosing in the document all information required by applicable law or regulation;
- ~~(v)(vi)~~ providing the assurance practitioner with all requested ~~and relevant~~ information, including ~~in relation to~~ any matter, event, adjustment, or transaction that may be relevant to the historical financial information, as well as access to all ~~financial records, related data, documentation and other information relevant to the historical financial information requested or necessary for the completion of the assurance engagement;~~
- ~~(vi)(vii)~~ the ~~consistent application of the~~ entity's recognition and measurement accounting policies ~~have been consistently applied have been consistently applied~~ in the preparation of the historical financial information;
- ~~(vii)(viii)~~ ~~confirmation that the entity has~~ established ~~ing~~ and maintained ~~ing~~ an adequate internal control structure in order to facilitate the preparation of reliable historical financial information;
- ~~(viii)(ix)~~ advising the assurance practitioner of any matter, event or issue that has arisen or been discovered subsequent to the preparation of the ~~historical~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

financial information that may impact, or require adjustment to, the historical financial information;

~~(ix)(x)~~ providing the assurance practitioner with a listing of all known immaterial adjustments, or known uncorrected immaterial misstatements, that have not been made in the historical financial information; together with an acknowledgement that they are responsible for concluding-confirming that such adjustments and/or misstatements are immaterial; and

~~(e)(h)~~ such other written representations that the assurance practitioner determines is are appropriate in the engagement circumstances.

~~56-58.~~ The date of the representation letter shall be as near as practicable to, but not after, the date of the assurance report.

~~57-59.~~ The assurance practitioner shall evaluate the representations received from the responsible party for their reasonableness and consistency with other information and evidence obtained.

~~58-60.~~ If one or more of the requested written representations are not provided, or the assurance practitioner has sufficient doubt about the competence, integrity or reliability of those providing the written representations, the assurance practitioner shall:

- (a) discuss the matter with the responsible party;
- (b) evaluate the implications on the reliability of evidence obtained; and
- (c) take appropriate actions, including determining the effect on the assurance conclusion and the assurance report.

(Ref: Para. A43-A45)

Forming the Assurance Conclusion (Ref: Para. 0-A1)

~~59-61.~~ The assurance practitioner shall form a conclusion about whether the historical financial information is free from material misstatement. In forming the conclusion the assurance practitioner shall consider: ;

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (a) the assurance practitioner's conclusion in paragraph 51+ of this ASAE regarding the sufficiency and appropriateness of evidence obtained; and
- (b) an evaluation of whether any uncorrected misstatements are material, either individually or in aggregate, to the historical financial information.

62. If the assurance practitioner is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate evidence, a scope limitation exists, and the assurance practitioner shall determine whether it is appropriate to continue the assurance engagement. If the assurance practitioner has determined it is appropriate to continue the assurance engagement, the assurance practitioner shall prepare an assurance report that expresses a qualified or disclaimer of conclusion, as appropriate on the historical financial information.

~~60-63.~~ The assurance practitioner shall discuss with the responsible party any conclusion that is intended to be modified prior to preparing the assurance report. If the responsible party does not agree to make the necessary changes to appropriately resolve the matter giving rise to the intended modification, the assurance practitioner shall consider the implications for the assurance engagement and the assurance report.

Preparing the Assurance Report

~~61-64.~~ The assurance practitioner shall provide a written assurance report to the responsible party containing a clear expression of the assurance practitioner's conclusion on the historical financial information included in the document. (Ref: Para. A47-A48)

~~62-65.~~ If applicable, the assurance practitioner's conclusion on the historical financial information shall be clearly separated from each other types of financial information ~~shall be clearly separated~~ within the assurance report.

Basic Elements of the Assurance Report

~~63-66.~~ The assurance report shall include the following basic elements:
(Ref: Para. A1-A1)

- (a) a title that clearly indicates the report is an independent ~~independent assurance report~~ assurance report;

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (b) an addressee;
- ~~(e) a scope/background section that:~~
- ~~(c) identifies the purpose of the assurance report; and where applicable, and the fact that it will be included in the document;~~
- (d) a scope section that:
 - (i) identifies the historical financial information being reported on, including the and, the time period covered by each type;
 - ~~(ii) refers to the section of the document that outlines the applicable criteria used in the for the preparation of the historical financial information;~~
 - ~~(iii)(ii) where applicable, states that the assurance report has been prepared for inclusion in the document and, accordingly, is not suitable for any other purpose;~~
 - (iii) where applicable, states that the assurance report has been prepared for inclusion in a specific document, and, accordingly, is not suitable for any other purpose;
 - (iv) a statement that identifies the entity(s) whose historical financial information is the subject of the assurance report, and where applicable, the that is subject to the corporate fundraising, the responsible party and their responsibilities and the assurance practitioner's responsibilities;
 - (v) states a statement that the assurance engagement was performed in accordance with this ASAE;
 - (vi) states a statement that the firm of which the assurance practitioner is a member member of, applies ASQC 1; and
 - (vii) states a statement that the assurance practitioner has complied with relevant ethical requirements;

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (e) a clearly identified section that details for the historical financial information:
- (i) the source of the historical financial information;
 - ~~(i)(ii)~~ whether it has been previously audited or reviewed by whom, by another assurance practitioner, and the type of ~~opinion~~ conclusion expressed;
 - ~~(ii)~~ the type of engagement conducted by the assurance practitioner, the level of assurance, and the type of conclusion planned; and
 - ~~(iii)~~ the source of the historical financial information and that the responsible party is responsible for its preparation; and
 - ~~(iv)(iii)~~ the type of engagement conducted by the assurance practitioner, the level of assurance and the type of conclusion planned; and
 - ~~(v)(iv)~~ an ~~informative~~ summary of assurance procedures performed as the basis for the assurance practitioner's conclusion on the historical financial information;
- (f) statements by the assurance practitioner that the engagement did not include:
- (i) if applicable, updating any previously audited or reviewed financial information used as a source of the historical financial information; or
 - (ii) an audit of the historical financial information;
- (g) where applicable, the assurance report shall include an Emphasis of Matter paragraph alerting users of the assurance report that the historical financial information is prepared in accordance with applicable criteria for inclusion in the document, and that as a result, the historical financial information may not be suitable for another purpose; ~~states that the assurance report has been prepared for inclusion in the document and, accordingly, is not suitable for any other purpose;~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~(f)~~(h) the assurance practitioner's conclusion on the historical financial information:

- (i) in a limited assurance engagement:
 - ◇ with an unmodified conclusion, that nothing has come to the assurance practitioner's attention that causes the assurance practitioner to believe that the historical financial information ~~does is~~ not presented fairly, in all material respects, in accordance with ~~the recognition and measurement principles prescribed requirements (but not all of the presentation and disclosure requirements) of the~~ in applicable Australian Accounting Standards ~~the applicable criteria as disclosed in section [x] of the document, and accounting policies adopted by the entity and the basis of preparation, as disclosed in section [x] of the document;~~ or
 - ◇ with a modified conclusion, a clear description of all the reasons for the modification properly described in a Basis for Modification qualification paragraph, with the effects appropriately quantified, to the extent reasonably practical, and disclosed in the assurance report; or
- (ii) in a reasonable assurance engagement:
 - ◇ with an unmodified conclusion, the conclusion shall be a in a positive form; and shall state that the historical financial information is presented fairly, in all material respects, in accordance ~~with the recognition and measurement principles prescribed in Australian Accounting Standards, and accounting policies adopted by the entity and the basis of preparation~~ with the applicable criteria, as disclosed in section [x] of the document; or

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- ◇ with a modified conclusion, a clear description of all the reasons for the modification properly described in a Basis for Modification qualification paragraph, with the effects appropriately quantified, to the extent reasonably practical, and disclosed in the assurance report; and
- ~~(g)~~ a section covering events up to and including the date of the ~~independent~~ assurance report that includes a statement confirming whether s:-
- ~~(h)~~ ~~including a statement confirming whether~~ any material transactions or events outside the entity's ordinary business have come to the assurance practitioner's attention that would require comment, or adjustment to, the historical financial information, ~~or cause such historical financial information to be misleading or deceptive;~~ and
- (i) if applicable, and to the extent it can be reasonably determined their potential impact to the extent it can be reasonably estimated;
- (j) an independence, or disclosure of interest, statement;
- (k) the assurance practitioner's signature;
- (l) the date of the assurance practitioner's report that shall be the date the assurance practitioner signs the report; and
- (m) the assurance practitioner's address.

— If the assurance practitioner is required by law or regulation to use a specific layout or wording in the assurance report, the assurance practitioner shall evaluate whether users might misunderstand the assurance obtained; and if so, whether additional explanation in the assurance practitioner's report can mitigate possible misunderstanding. ~~report shall:~~ The assurance practitioner shall not

~~67.~~ ~~shall refer to report~~ compliance with this ASAE or other AUASB Standards in the assurance report unless it only if the assurance report includes, ~~a at a~~ at a minimum, each of the elements identified in paragraph 66 of this ASAE. ~~;~~ and

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (n) ~~evaluate whether users might misunderstand the assurance obtained; and if so, whether additional explanation in the assurance practitioner's report can mitigate possible misunderstanding.~~

Unmodified and Modified Conclusions

Unmodified conclusions (Ref: Para. A1-A50)

64.68. The assurance practitioner shall express an unmodified conclusion when the assurance practitioner concludes:

- (a) in the case of a limited assurance engagement, that, based on the procedures performed, nothing has come to the attention of the assurance practitioner that causes the assurance practitioner to believe that the historical financial information is not presented fairly, prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with the applicable criteria, or
- (b) in the case of a reasonable assurance engagement, that the historical financial information is prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with the applicable criteria.

Modified conclusions (Ref: Para. 0-0)

65.69. The assurance practitioner shall express a modified conclusion when the following circumstances exist, and in the assurance practitioner's professional judgement, the effect of the matter is or may be material ~~modify the opinion in the assurance practitioner's report when express a modified conclusion when the following circumstances exist and, in the assurance practitioner's professional judgement, the effect of the matter is or may be material.~~

- (a) when ~~when~~ the assurance practitioner's ~~conclusion~~ conclusion is ~~is~~ that based on the evidence obtained, the ~~the~~ historical financial information is not free from material misstatement; ~~or~~

~~when the assurance practitioner is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate evidence to conclude that he historical financial information is free from material misstatement.~~

- (a) ~~In such cases, the~~ The assurance practitioner shall express a qualified or adverse conclusion when.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (b) ~~when the assurance practitioner's conclusion's, having obtained sufficient appropriate evidence, concludes a conclusion is that misstatements, individually or in the aggregate, are the effects, or possible effects, of a matter are not so material but not or pervasive-, to the historical financial information; or~~
- (c) ~~when the assurance practitioner is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate evidence to conclude that the historical financial information is free from material misstatement; or~~
- (d) ~~the assurance practitioner is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate evidence on which to base the conclusion, but the assurance practitioner concludes that the possible effects on the historical financial information of undetected misstatements, if any, could be material but not pervasive; or~~
- (b) ~~as to require an adverse conclusion or a disclaimer of conclusion. In such cases, the assurance practitioner shall express a qualified conclusion;~~
- (e) ~~The assurance practitioner shall express an adverse conclusion when the assurance practitioner, having obtained sufficient appropriate evidence, concludes that misstatements, individually or in the aggregate, are both material and pervasive to the historical financial information; or~~
- (e) ~~The assurance practitioner shall disclaim an conclusion when the assurance practitioner is when there has been a material scope limitation and the possible effect is so pervasive and material that the assurance practitioner concludes that no level of assurance can be provided. In such cases, the practitioner shall express a qualified conclusion or a disclaimer of conclusion; or~~
- (d)(f) ~~when the assurance practitioner is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate evidence on which to base the conclusion, and the assurance practitioner concludes that the possible effects of the undetected matters, if any, that cause the on the historical financial information information of undetected misstatements, if any, could be both not to be properly prepared, could be material and pervasive. In such~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~cases, the assurance practitioner shall express a disclaimer of conclusion.~~

~~66-70.~~ If the assurance practitioner expresses a modified conclusion because of a scope limitation, but is also aware of a matter(s) that causes the historical financial information to be materially misstated, the assurance practitioner shall include in the assurance report a clear description of both the scope limitation and the matter(s) that causes ~~that~~ the historical financial information to be materially misstated.

Emphasis of Matter Paragraph

71. If the assurance practitioner concludes that it is necessary to draw users' attention to a matter presented or disclosed in the historical financial information or the accompanying explanatory notes, on the basis that the matter is of such importance that it is fundamental to users' understanding of the historical financial information, the assurance practitioner shall include an Emphasis of Matter paragraph in the ~~independent~~ assurance report.

Use of Going Concern Assumption Appropriate but a Material~~y~~ Uncertainty Exists (Ref: Para. A51-A51(b))

~~67-72.~~ If the assurance practitioner concludes there is a material uncertainty related to events or conditions that individually or collectively may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern, the assurance practitioner shall:

- (a) express a qualified or adverse conclusion, as appropriate, in the assurance report when the responsible party does not make appropriate changes in ~~the historical document~~financial information~~document~~; or
- (b) include an Emphasis of Matter Paragraph in the assurance ~~conclusion report~~ when the responsible party makes appropriate changes in the ~~historical document~~financial information~~document~~.³⁸

³⁸ The concepts and discussions on the circumstances under which an emphasis of matter is included paragraph ~~be~~ in an auditor's report are contained in ASA 706 *Emphasis of Matter Paragraphs and Other Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report*. It and ~~may~~ be helpful in assisting the assurance practitioner decide if an Emphasis of Matter paragraph ~~it~~ is appropriate for the assurance engagement relating to corporate fundraisings.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Consent to the Inclusion of the Assurance Report in a Public Document (Ref: Para. A52-A53)

~~68-73.~~ The assurance practitioner shall consider applicable law or regulation when providing consent in writing ~~to for~~ the inclusion of the assurance report in ~~another the~~ document.

~~69-74.~~ Where the assurance practitioner considers it inappropriate for the assurance report to be included in the document, consent shall either not be provided, or be revoked prior to the relevant date of the document's release.

Documentation

~~75.~~ The assurance practitioner shall prepare documentation on a timely basis.

~~70-76.~~ The assurance practitioner shall prepare documentation that is sufficient to enable an experienced assurance, having no previous connection with the assurance engagement, to prepare documentation, on a timely basis, of all matters that provides a record of the basis for the assurance report that is sufficient and appropriate to enable an experienced practitioner, having no previous connection with the engagement to understand:

(Ref: Para. A54-A55)

- (a) the nature, timing and extent of the assurance procedures performed to comply with this ASAE and applicable legal and regulatory requirements;
- (b) the results of the procedures performed, and the evidence obtained; and
- (c) significant matters arising during the assurance engagement, the conclusions reached thereon, and significant professional judgements made in reaching those conclusions.

Pro Forma Historical Financial Information

~~71-77.~~ Paragraphs 78 to 97 of this ASAE deal with additional special considerations in the application of the Historical Financial Information requirements in paragraph's ~~2223~~ to ~~7675~~ (inclusive) to historical financial information that has ~~had been adjusted by for~~ pro

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

forma ~~transactions and associated~~ adjustments applied, resulting in pro forma historical financial information.

Assurance Engagement Acceptance

Preconditions for Acceptance

~~72-78.~~ In addition to the requirements in paragraph 23 and 24 of this ASAE, the assurance practitioner shall prior to agreeing the terms of the assurance engagement, obtain the agreement from the responsible party that it accepts its responsibility for selecting:

- (a) the source of the base financial information that is used, and that such a source will be historical financial information;
- (b) the basis of preparation for the pro forma historical financial information; and
- (c) the pro forma ~~transactions and associated~~ adjustments to be made to the historical financial information.

Other Factors Affecting Engagement Acceptance

~~79.~~ The assurance practitioner shall follow the requirements in paragraph's 25 to 27-25 of this ASAE.

Agreeing on the Terms of the Assurance Engagement

~~73-80.~~ In addition to the requirements in paragraph 29(c) of this ASAE, the agreed terms of the assurance engagement shall include that the assurance practitioner is responsible for performing assurance procedures applicable to the engagement and the limited assurance conclusion being provided. the following assurance practitioner responsibilities: (Ref: Para. A56)

~~the assurance practitioner will provide limited assurance on the pro forma historical financial information; and~~

~~the assurance practitioner is responsible for performing assurance procedures on the pro forma financial information to determine if it has been prepared in accordance with the stated basis of preparation.~~

Changing the Terms of the Engagement

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~74-81.~~ The assurance practitioner shall follow the requirements in paragraphs 30 to 32 of this ASAE.

Planning the Assurance Engagement

Planning Activities

~~75-82.~~ In addition to the requirements in paragraph ~~s 33 to~~ 35 of this ASAE the assurance practitioner's planning considerations shall include:

(Ref: Para. A58)

- (a) determining the source of the base financial information, ~~whether and~~ it has been previously audited or reviewed, and what type of opinion was issued; ~~and~~
- (b) ~~obtaining an~~ understanding of the basis for, ~~and calculations underlying~~ the ~~pro forma transactions and associated pro forma~~ adjustments.

Reliance on the work of another Assurance Practitioner

~~83.~~ The assurance practitioner shall follow the requirements in paragraphs 36 and 37~~X~~ of this ASAE.

~~(b)~~

Performing the Engagement

Assurance Procedures

~~76-84.~~ In addition to the requirements in paragraph ~~s's 1 and~~ 38 to 40 of this ASAE, the assurance practitioner shall design and perform the following procedures on the pro forma historical financial information:

(Ref: Para. A60)

- (a) ~~if~~ the source of the base financial information has not been previously audited or reviewed, perform such procedures as is necessary to obtain sufficient appropriate evidence on which to rely for the assurance engagement purposes;
- (b) ~~determine the differences, if any between the pro forma historical financial information's basis of preparation and~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

the corresponding statutory audited or reviewed historical financial information;

- ~~(b)~~(c) determine whether the ~~pro forma transactions and~~ pro forma adjustments are:
- ~~(i)~~ supported by appropriate evidence;
 - ~~(ii)~~ based on grounds that have a reasonable basis;
 - ~~(i)~~(iii) consistent with the ~~stated basis of preparation and with the entity's recognition and measurement accounting policies; including the entity's recognition and measurement~~ accounting policies, including the entity's recognition and measurement ~~principles in the Australian Accounting Standards, subject to assumptions relevant to the fundraisings disclosed in section [X] of the document;~~
 - ~~(ii)~~(iv) attributable to the underlying event(s) or transaction(s);
 - ~~(iii)~~ have a reasonable basis; and
 - ~~(iv)~~(v) are mathematically correct; and
- ~~(e)~~(d) determine whether the resultant pro forma financial information reflects the results of applying the pro forma ~~transactions and pro forma associated~~ adjustments to the base financial information;
- ~~(d)~~(e) identify whether any other material adjustments are necessary to materially reflect the effects of the ~~corporate~~ fundraising transaction, or other transaction for which pro forma adjustments have been made and/or to ensure the pro forma historical financial information is not misleading, and:
- (i) if such an adjustment is required, the assurance practitioner shall discuss the matter with the responsible party; and
 - ~~(ii)~~ if the adjustment is not made, the assurance practitioner shall consider the implications for the assurance engagement and the assurance report.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Using the Work of the Responsible Party's Expert

85. The assurance practitioner shall follow the requirements in paragraphs ~~41~~~~30 to 32~~ of this ASAE.

Using the Work of the Assurance Practitioner's Expert

86. The assurance practitioner shall follow the requirements in paragraphs ~~42~~ ~~X to X~~ of this ASAE.

Adjustments Identified by the Assurance Practitioner

87. The assurance practitioner shall follow the requirements in paragraphs ~~43~~ ~~X~~ to ~~44~~ ~~X~~ of this ASAE.

77. ; and

78. whether the stated basis of preparation for the pro forma forecast is not misleading for its intended purpose.

Evaluating the Sufficiency and Appropriateness of Evidence Obtained

88. ~~In addition to the requirements in paragraph 1 of this ASAE, T~~the assurance practitioner shall evaluate whether they have obtained sufficient appropriate evidence³⁹ on which to express an assurance conclusion ~~on the , on the pro forma historical financial information, in the context of the engagement including whether the at pro forma historical financial information information.~~

Other Information included in the document

79. ~~The assurance practitioner shall follow the requirements in paragraphs 46 to 49~~~~30 to X~~ of this ASAE. ~~in the document is:~~

80. ~~materially misstated on the stated basis of the pro forma transactions and associated pro forma adjustments; and~~

~~81-89. adequately refers to, or describes the stated basis of preparation; including the extent to which it is consistent with the recognition and measurement principles policies, except for pro forma adjustments to reflect the fundraisings transaction in the pro forma historical financial information.~~

³⁹ The concepts and discussions on the sufficiency and appropriates of evidence related to an audit engagement are contained in ASA 500 *Audit Evidence* and may be helpful in evaluating the evidence for corporate fundraising engagements.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Going Concern Considerations

90. The assurance practitioner shall follow the requirements in paragraphs 50 to 52~~X to X~~ of this ASAE.

Consideration of Events Up to the date of the Assurance Report

91. The assurance practitioner shall follow the requirements in paragraphs 53 and 54~~X to X~~ of this ASAE.

Consideration of Events Identified after date of the Assurance Report

92. The assurance practitioner shall follow the requirements in paragraphs 55 and 56~~X to X~~ of this ASAE.

Written Representations

~~82.~~93. In addition to the requirements in paragraph's 57 to 60~~57~~ of this ASAE, the assurance practitioner shall request the responsible party to include in the written representation letter an acknowledgement of their responsibility for:

- (a) the preparation of the pro forma historical financial information for the time periods stated, in accordance with the stated basis of preparation;
- (b) selecting the stated basis of preparation of the pro forma historical financial information;
- (c) selecting and applying the pro forma ~~transactions and associated~~ adjustments; and
- (d) where applicable, ensuring that any assumptions used have ~~objectively~~ reasonable grounds for inclusion in the pro forma historical financial information.

Forming the Assurance Conclusion

83. In addition to the requirements in paragraph 61 of this ASAE, the assurance practitioner shall form a conclusion about ~~whether~~ the pro forma historical financial information ~~is free from material misstatement, and prepared on the basis stated~~. In forming the conclusion the assurance practitioner shall consider:

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~84.94.~~ the assurance practitioner's conclusion in paragraph ~~88~~⁴ of this ASAE regarding the sufficiency and appropriateness of evidence obtained;⁵

- ~~(a) whether there are any uncorrected misstatements are material, either individually or in aggregate to the pro forma historical financial information;~~
- ~~(b) whether the pro forma historical financial information has been properly prepared on basis of the pro forma transactions and associated adjustments; and~~
- ~~(c) whether the entity has been consistent, and complied with, the recognition and measurement accounting policies disclosed in the document.~~

~~95.~~ The assurance practitioner shall follow the requirements in paragraph's 62 and 63 X of this ASAE.

~~85.~~ If the assurance practitioner is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate evidence, a scope limitation exists, and the assurance practitioner shall determine whether it is appropriate to continue the engagement. If the assurance practitioner has determined it is appropriate to continue the engagement, the assurance practitioner shall express a qualified conclusion or disclaimer of conclusion, as appropriate.

Preparing the Assurance Report

~~86.96.~~ The assurance practitioner shall follow the requirements in paragraphs 64 and 65 X to X of this ASAE.

Basic Elements of the Assurance Report

~~87.97.~~ In addition to the requirement in paragraph 66 of this ASAE, the assurance report shall include ~~the following~~:

- (a) statements in the ~~scope/background~~background section that:
 - (i) ~~identifies the y ies the source(s) of the historical financial information used as the base(s) for the pro forma historical financial information being reported on, including the time period covered;~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (ii) identifies whether the historical financial information used as the base for the pro forma historical financial information has been previously audited or reviewed; and
 - (iii) refers to the ~~relevant~~ section ~~of in~~ the document that outlines the which includes the relevant disclosures that explain the basis of preparation of the pro forma historical financial information;
- (b) — a statement by the assurance practitioner that:
- (e) — the assurance engagement did not include ~~either:~~
 - (d) — updating any previously audited or review ~~of ed~~ financial information that may have been used in the preparation of the pro forma historical financial information; or
 - (e)(b) — an audit of the pro forma historical financial information itself;
 - (f)(c) — the assurance practitioner's limited conclusion on the pro forma historical financial information:
- (i) — ~~if the engagement is a limited assurance engagement, and with a has an~~ unmodified conclusion, a statement that nothing has come to the assurance practitioner's attention that causes the assurance practitioner to believe that the pro forma historical financial information set out in the document does not present fairly, in all material respects, ~~the pro forma historical financial information of the entity on the~~ the stated basis of preparation as ~~set out disclosed~~ in section [x] of the document; (Ref: Para. A61) or
 - (i) — the pro forma transactions and associated adjustments described in the document, and in accordance with the accounting policies adopted by the entity and also described in the document;
or
 - (ii) — ~~if the engagement is a limited assurance engagement, and with a has an~~ modified conclusion, includes a a clear description of all the

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

reasons for the modification properly described, with the effects appropriately quantified, to the extent reasonably practical, and disclosed in the assurance report.

- ~~(iii) — Aggregated Pro Forma Financial Information~~
- ~~(iv) — Paragraphs 97 to 102 inclusive of this ASAE deal with additional special considerations in the application of requirements in paragraphs 21 to 84 inclusive of this ASAE to pro forma financial information that has been aggregated. The pro forma financial information can be either historical or forecast in nature.~~
- ~~(v) — Assurance Engagement Acceptance~~
- ~~(vi) — Preconditions for Acceptance (Ref: Para. A83)~~
- ~~(vii) — In addition to the requirements in paragraph 21 of this ASAE, the assurance practitioner shall prior to agreeing the terms of the assurance engagement obtain agreement from the responsible party that it acknowledges and understands its responsibility for:
 - ~~(viii) — the base pro forma financial information to be aggregated;~~
 - ~~(ix) — the selection, and application, of adjustments to the base pro forma financial information;~~
 - ~~(x) — the applicable criteria, or stated basis of preparation, as applicable;~~
 - ~~(xi) — that the aggregation is performed either:
 - ~~(xii) — for pro forma historical financial information on the basis of applicable criteria; or~~
 - ~~(xiii) — for pro forma forecast on the basis stated; and~~
 - ~~(xiv) — the resultant aggregated financial information itself.~~~~~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- ~~(xv) — Other Factors Affecting Engagement Acceptance (Ref: Para. A84)~~
- ~~(xvi) — In addition the requirements in paragraph 22 of this ASAE, the assurance practitioner shall accept the engagement only when the assurance practitioner is satisfied that the base financial information used in the aggregation is appropriate for the responsible party's intended purpose.~~
- ~~(xvii) — Agreeing on the Terms of the Assurance Engagement~~
- ~~(xviii) — In addition to the requirements in paragraph 26 of this ASAE, the agreed terms of the assurance engagement shall include:~~
- ~~(xix) — the assurance practitioner will provide limited assurance on the aggregated financial information;~~
- ~~(xx) — the assurance practitioner will not express any assurance on the base pro forma financial information; and~~
- ~~(xxi) — the responsibilities of the assurance practitioner include performing assurance procedures on the aggregated pro forma financial information to enable them to determine whether the aggregation has been performed by the responsible party:~~
- ~~(xxii) — for pro forma historical financial information based on the applicable criteria; or~~
- ~~(xxiii) — for the pro forma forecast on the stated basis.~~
- ~~(xxiv) — Performing the Engagement (Ref: Para. A85)~~
- ~~(xxv) — Assurance Procedures~~
- ~~(xxvi) — In addition to the requirements in paragraph 1 of this ASAE, the assurance practitioner shall perform the following procedures:~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~(xxvii) whether the responsible party has appropriate extracted the base pro forma financial information from its source;~~

~~(xxviii) where applicable, understand the basis for the audit or review opinion on the source of the base pro forma financial information and its impact if any, on the aggregated financial information;~~

~~(xxix) understand the nature of the adjustments made in the aggregation process, and ensure they are in accordance;~~

~~(xxx) for pro forma historical financial information on the applicable criteria; or~~

~~(xxxi) for pro forma forecast on the stated basis; and~~

~~(xxxii) whether the aggregation calculations are arithmetically accurate.~~

~~(xxxiii) Evaluating the Sufficiency and Appropriateness of Evidence Obtained~~

~~(xxxiv) In addition to the requirements in paragraph 41 of this ASAE, the assurance practitioner shall evaluate whether they have obtained sufficient appropriate evidence on which to expressed a limited assurance conclusion on the aggregated financial information, in the context of the engagement, including whether the aggregated financial information:~~

~~(xxxv) is prepared in accordance with the applicable criteria; and~~

~~(xxxvi) adequately refers to, or describes the applicable criteria.~~

~~(xxxvii) Preparing the Assurance Report~~

~~(xxxviii) In addition to the requirements in paragraph 60 of this ASAE, the assurance report on aggregated pro forma financial information, shall include the following:~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- ~~(xxxix) — statements in the scope/background section that:~~
- ~~(xl) — identifies the source of the pro forma financial information used as the basis of the aggregated pro forma financial information;~~
 - ~~(xli) — includes a statement as to whether the base pro forma financial information has been previously audited or reviewed; and~~
 - ~~(xlii) — references to the relevant disclosures in the document, that explain the basis of preparation of the aggregated pro forma financial information;~~
 - ~~(xliii) — a statement by the assurance practitioner that the engagement did not include an audit or review of the underlying pro forma financial information;~~
 - ~~(xliv) — the assurance practitioner's limited assurance conclusion on the aggregated pro forma financial information;~~
 - ~~(xlv) — for unmodified conclusions, the assurance practitioner shall state that nothing has come to the assurance practitioner's attention that causes the assurance practitioner to believe that the pro forma financial information is not aggregated, in all material respects, in accordance with the applicable criteria; or~~
- ~~(xlv)(ii) for modified conclusions, the assurance report shall include a clear description of all the reasons for the modification properly described, with the effects appropriately quantified and disclosed in the assurance report.~~

Unmodified and Modified conclusions

98. The assurance practitioner shall follow the requirements in paragraphs ~~X~~68 to 71 ~~to X~~ of this ASAE.

Use of the Going Concern Assumptions Appropriate but a Material Uncertainty Exists

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

99. The assurance practitioner shall follow the requirements in paragraphs ~~72X to X~~ of this ASAE.

Consent to the Inclusion of the Assurance Report in a Public Document

100. The assurance practitioner shall follow the requirements in paragraphs ~~73 to 74X to X~~ of this ASAE.

Documentation

101. The assurance practitioner shall follow the requirements in paragraphs ~~75 and 76X to X~~ of this ASAE.

Prospective Financial Information

~~88-102.~~ Paragraphs 103~~88~~ to 155 ~~135~~ inclusive of this ASAE deal with the special considerations in performing assurance engagements in relation to prospective financial information in the form of a forecast, prepared on the basis of the responsible party's best-estimate assumptions, corporate fundraisings or prospective financial information related to prospective financial information in the form of a forecast, or a combination of a forecast and a projection. For a forecast prospective financial information that is additionally adjusted for by pro forma transactions and associated adjustments (pro forma forecast), being a pro forma forecast, refer to the requirements in paragraphs Error! Reference source not found.X to 179172.

Assurance Engagement Acceptance

Preconditions for Acceptance (Ref: Para. A62-A63)

103. The assurance practitioner shall prior to agreeing the terms of the assurance engagement, determine whether the applicable financial reporting framework for the preparation of the prospective financial information proposed by the responsible party is acceptable.

~~89-104.~~ The assurance practitioner shall obtain agreement from the responsible party that and obtain agreement from the responsible party: (Ref: Para. A79-A80)

- (a) ~~that it~~ understands and accepts the terms of the assurance engagement, including the assurance practitioner's reporting responsibilities and type of assurance to be expressed being limited;

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (b) ~~that it~~ acknowledges and understands its responsibility for:
- (i) the preparation and presentation of ~~the~~ prospective financial information:
 - ◇ ~~based on assumptions that have are objectively reasonable grounds⁴⁰, and not on the basis of material hypothetical assumptions;~~
 - ◇ ~~with a reasonable basis⁴¹ of preparation;~~
 - ◇ that covers a defined time period;
 - ◇ that is not misleading; and
 - ◇ where applicable, has reasonable grounds for inclusion in a public document;⁴²
 - (ii) ~~for~~ the preparation and issuance of the document⁴³ in which the prospective financial information will be presented;
 - (iii) ~~for~~ such internal control as the responsible party determines is necessary to properly prepare the prospective financial information;
- (c) ~~that it~~ will provide the assurance practitioner with:
- (i) access to all information relevant to the prospective financial information, including the source data used in developing the assumptions used;

⁴⁰ ~~What constitutes a “reasonable basis” for preparation depends on the specific circumstances of the assurance engagement but may include where the information has a relevant factual foundation. Where the prospective financial information is intended to be included in a public document, refer RG 170 for more guidance.~~

⁴¹ ~~What constitutes a “reasonable basis” for preparation depends on the specific circumstances of the assurance engagement but may include where the information has a relevant factual foundation. Where the prospective financial information is intended to be included in a public document, refer RG 170 for more guidance.~~

⁴² Where the prospective financial information is intended to be included in a public document, refer RG 170 for guidance on what constitutes reasonable grounds.

⁴³ The *Corporations Act 2001* and the Corporations Regulations places specific requirements on directors in relation to the preparation of documents that are public documents, including presentation of financial information included therein. For example, see section 92(3).

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (ii) access to the whole document in which the prospective financial information is included;
- (iii) additional information requested by the assurance practitioner for the purpose of the assurance engagement;
- ~~(iv)~~ unrestricted access to those within the entity from whom the assurance practitioner determines it necessary to obtain evidence;
- ~~(iv)(v)~~ unrestricted access to ~~including where~~ appropriate, the responsible party's ~~third party~~ experts, where appropriate; and
- ~~(v)(vi)~~ a written representation letter covering all matters requested by the assurance practitioner within the timeframe required.

Other Factors Affecting Engagement Acceptance

~~90.105.~~ The assurance practitioner shall accept the engagement only when:
(Ref: Para: ~~A82-A84~~)

- (a) on the basis of preliminary knowledge of the assurance engagement circumstances, nothing has come to the assurance practitioner's attention to indicate that the:
 - (i) requirements of the relevant ethical principles described in ASA 102, will not be satisfied;
 - (ii) prospective financial information has been prepared on the basis of ~~clearly unrealistic~~ assumptions that clearly do not have a reasonable basis, hypothetical assumptions only, or includes material hypothetical assumptions; (Ref: Para: A1(a))
 - ~~(iii)~~ applicable criteria the stated basis of preparation ~~to be applied in the preparation~~ of the prospective financial information is unacceptable; and
 - ~~(iii)(iv)~~ the financial information used as the source of the prospective financial information has been previously audited or reviewed, or will be

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

reviewed as part of the terms of the assurance engagement;

- (b) the basis upon which the engagement is to be performed has been agreed through establishing that the preconditions, as set out in paragraph 103 of this ASAE, for an assurance engagement are present;
- (c) the assurance practitioner is satisfied that those persons who are to perform the assurance engagement possess the necessary professional competencies;
- (d) the assurance engagement has a rational purpose;
(Ref: Para. A66A82)
- ~~(d)~~(e) the assurance practitioner believes the prospective financial information will be appropriate for its intended use; and
- ~~(e)~~(f) the assurance practitioner believes that the assurance report will be used for its intended purpose.

~~91.106.~~ If the preconditions for the assurance engagement, as set out in paragraph 103 of this ASAE are not present, the assurance practitioner shall discuss the matter with the responsible party. If changes cannot be made to meet the preconditions, the assurance practitioner shall not accept the engagement as an assurance engagement unless required by applicable law or regulation. Unless required by law or regulation to do so, the assurance practitioner shall not accept the proposed engagement.

~~92.107.~~ The assurance practitioner shall agree to perform any non-assurance services in connection with the assurance engagement only in accordance with relevant ethical requirements and applicable professional standards,⁴⁴ having particular regard to independence. (Ref: Para. A68)

Agreeing on the Terms of the Assurance Engagement

~~93.108.~~ The assurance practitioner shall agree the terms of the assurance engagement with the responsible party in writing. (Ref: Para. A1-A69)

~~94.109.~~ The agreed terms of the assurance engagement shall include:
(Ref: Para. A88-A89)

⁴⁴ See APES 110 *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants*, (November 2009) issued by the Accounting Professional and Ethical Standards Board.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (a) the objective(s) and scope of the assurance engagement, including:
- (i) the assurance practitioner's understanding of the purpose of the assurance engagement;
 - (ii) confirmation that the assurance practitioner will conduct the engagement in accordance with this ASAE;
 - (iii) the nature, source, time period covered, and purpose of the prospective financial information;
 - (iv) if applicable, the nature, source, and time period covered of any financial information used as the source of the prospective financial information, and that will be subject to review as part of the engagement;
 - ~~(iv)(v)~~ a statement that the assurance practitioner is not responsible for the preparation of the prospective financial information, or the selection of the assumptions used in its preparation;
 - ~~(v)(vi)~~ where practical, a statement that the assurance practitioner will disclaim responsibility for any reliance on the assurance report, or on the prospective financial information to which it relates, to any party other than the responsible party, or for any purpose other than that for which the assurance report was prepared;
 - ~~(vi)~~ the proposed wording of the assurance opinion conclusion, including that the type of assurance that is expected to be provided is limited assurance ~~in respect of:~~
 - ~~(vii)~~ whether the responsible party's best estimate assumptions provide an objectively reasonable basis for the preparation of the prospective financial information; and
 - ~~(viii)(vii)~~ whether the preparation of the prospective financial information is in accordance with the applicable criteria;

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- ~~(ix)~~(viii) the fact that the engagement cannot be relied upon to identify fraud(s), error(s), illegal action(s) or other irregularities that may exist within the entity;
- (b) a summary of assurance procedures to be performed;
[\(Ref: Par. A1X\)](#)
- (c) the responsibilities of the assurance practitioner, including:
- (i) compliance with relevant ethical requirements, including independence;
- (ii) performing assurance procedures on the prospective financial information; ~~to determine if it has been prepared in accordance with the applicable criteria;~~
- ~~(iii) examining the reasonableness of assumptions used by the responsible party;~~
- ~~(iv)~~(iii) issuing a written report for the intended purpose;
- ~~(v)~~(iv) where applicable, and once satisfied it is appropriate to, providing consent in the required form to the responsible party for including the assurance practitioner's name and assurance report in the document; [\(Ref: Para. A74\)](#)
- (d) the responsibilities of the responsible party including those set out in paragraph 104~~89~~ of this ASAE; and
- (e) such other terms and conditions that the assurance practitioner determines are appropriate in the circumstances of the assurance engagement. [\(Ref: Par. A1X\)](#)

Changes in the Terms of the Assurance Engagement (Ref: Para. A1-A76)

~~95-110.~~ 110. The assurance practitioner shall not agree to a change in the terms of the assurance engagement where there is not a reasonable justification for doing so. If such a change is made, the assurance practitioner shall not disregard evidence that was obtained prior to the change. [\(Ref: Para. A1\)](#)

~~96-111.~~ 111. If the terms of the assurance engagement change, the assurance practitioner and the responsible party shall agree on, and record the

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

new terms of the [assurance](#) engagement in an [assurance](#) engagement letter or other suitable form of written agreement. (Ref: Para. A76)

~~97.112.~~ If the assurance practitioner is unable to agree to a change of the terms of the [assurance](#) engagement, and is not permitted by the responsible party to continue the original engagement, the assurance practitioner shall:

- (a) withdraw from the engagement where possible under applicable law or regulation; and
- (b) determine whether there is any obligation, either contractual or otherwise, to report the circumstances to other parties, such as those charged with governance, owners or regulators.

Planning the Assurance Engagement

~~98.~~ The assurance practitioner shall plan the assurance engagement in accordance with [this ASAE](#):

~~99.113.~~ [ASRE 3000, for assurance procedures other than reviews or audits of historical financial information;](#) and

- ~~(a)~~ [this ASAE, for other assurance engagement work performed on the financial information.](#)

Planning Activities

~~100.114.~~ The assurance practitioner shall use professional judgement to determine the nature, timing, and extent of assurance procedures to perform on the prospective financial information, in order to achieve the engagement objectives. (Ref: Para. A77)

~~101.115.~~ The assurance practitioner's planning considerations shall include: (Ref: Para. A79)

- (a) what the agreed terms of engagement require the assurance practitioner to opine on;
- (b) setting the scope, timing and direction of the assurance engagement;
- (c) [obtaining an understanding of the entity sufficient to be able to evaluate whether the responsible party has identified](#)

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

and applied all suitable applicable criteria and identified all and material best-estimate assumptions required for the preparation of the prospective financial information;

- (d) the type of underlying event(s) or transaction(s) that require the preparation of the prospective financial information and the extent of understanding required of the nature of any ~~the~~ entity involved;
- (e) any previous dealings with the entity including whether the assurance practitioner has:
- (i) audited or reviewed prior period financial report(s) that may have been used as ~~source data~~ the source of the prospective information;
 - (ii) an understanding of the accuracy of previously prepared prospective financial information by the responsible party as compared to actual results;
- ~~(f)~~ obtaining an understanding of the prospective financial information including the time period covered, basis of underlying best-estimate assumptions, intended use, the reliability of the ~~source data~~ prospective financial information, use of comparatives, and the extent to which it is affected by the responsible party's judgements sufficient to design and perform assurance procedures;
- ~~(g)(f)~~ obtaining an understanding of the entity sufficient to be able to evaluate whether the responsible party has identified all material assumptions required for the preparation of the prospective financial information;
- (g) whether, based on preliminary knowledge obtained through the planning process, the ~~applicable criteria~~ stated ~~basis applied criteria~~ criteria used in the preparation of the prospective financial information is not misleading for its intended purpose ~~has been incorrectly applied~~; (Ref: Para. A82)
- (h) obtaining an understanding of the other information included in the document, to assess whether it is consistent with the prospective financial information;
- (i) whether the assurance practitioner will need to contact the entity's auditor or other assurance practitioner in order to

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

understand what type of audit or review opinion was expressed on the most recent financial report;

- (j) understanding the requirements of any applicable law or regulation; ⁴⁵
- ~~(j)~~(k) setting materiality levels for planning and performing the engagement and evaluating the likelihood of material misstatements; ⁴⁶
- ~~(k)~~(l) considering assurance engagement risk; ⁴⁷
- ~~(l)~~(m) evaluating whether the use of (an) expert(s) is/are required;
- ~~(m)~~(n) the engagement team resources required for specific the engagement areas and how they will be managed, directed and supervised; ~~and~~
- ~~(n)~~(o) the expertise and experience of those persons preparing the prospective financial information; and
- ~~(o)~~(p) obtaining an understanding of internal control over the system process used to prepare the prospective financial information.

Reliance on the work of another Assurance Practitioner (Ref: Para. A83)

~~102.116.~~ If the assurance practitioner plans to place reliance ⁴⁸ on historical financial information that may be used as source data, ~~for comparative purposes with or support for,~~ the prospective financial

⁴⁵ Prospective financial information included in a public document under the Corporations Act 2001 is required to be based on reasonable grounds⁴⁵ to be considered not misleading. See section 728(2) and section 769C of the Corporations Act 2001. See ASIC's RG 170 Prospective Financial Information, paragraphs 170.17 and 170.20. See ASIC's RG 170 Prospective Financial Information, for further guidance on what constitutes "reasonable grounds", as well as some non-exhaustive examples of indicative factors that may suggest or demonstrate reasonable grounds.

⁴⁶ The concepts and discussions on materiality in an audit engagement are contained in ASA 320 *Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit* and may be helpful in determining the materiality levels for corporate fundraising engagements.

⁴⁷ The concepts and discussions on assurance engagement risk relevant to an audit engagement are contained in ASA 315 *Identifying and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement through Understanding the Entity and Its Environment*, and may be helpful to assurance practitioners when determining assurance engagement risk in the conduct of an assurance engagement.

⁴⁸ The concepts and discussions on auditor's using the work of other experts are contained in ASA 620 *Using the Work of an Auditor's Expert* and may be helpful in determining the extent of reliance in the conduct of an assurance engagement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

information, the assurance practitioner assesses if that historical financial information has been audited or reviewed by another assurance practitioner. In such cases, the assurance practitioner shall:

- (a) consider the scope, professional competence, work performed and conclusion expressed by the other assurance practitioner;
- (b) determine whether there is a need to perform additional procedures on the historical financial information;
- (c) be satisfied that the work is adequate for the assurance practitioner's purposes; and

~~and consequently~~consequently, consider how the historical financial information can provide a measure for assessing the reasonableness of the assumptions used in ~~to~~ the preparation of the prospective financial information.

~~103-117.~~ Where the other assurance practitioner's opinion was modified, determine the implications for the assurance engagement:

- (a) consider the assurance practitioner's ability to undertake the engagement in accordance with the agreed terms; and
- (b) consider the potential impact, if any, on the assurance procedures to be performed.

Performing the Engagement

Assurance Procedures (Ref: Para. A99-A102)

~~104.~~ The assurance practitioner shall design and perform limited assurance type procedures in accordance with ASAE 3000 and this ASAE.

~~105-118.~~ The assurance practitioner shall use professional judgement to design and perform procedures in order to obtain sufficient appropriate evidence on the basis of the best-estimate assumptions, and the preparation of prospective financial information on which to base a limited assurance conclusion, including:

- (a) developing an expectation of the prospective financial information for use when performing analytical procedures;

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- ~~(a)~~(b) consider the reasonableness and appropriateness of the time period covered by the prospective financial information;
- (c) whether the source of the prospective financial information has been extracted from an appropriate source and whether it has been reviewed, and if so, the type of opinion expressed;
- (d) whether the source of the base financial information includes historical financial information, and has not been previously reviewed; (Ref: Para. A93)
- ~~(b)~~(e) determine whether the ~~best-estimate~~ assumptions used in the preparation are: (Ref: Para. 127)
- (i) ~~are~~ supported by appropriate evidence;
- (ii) based on best-estimate assumptions and not material hypothetical assumptions;
- ~~(ii)~~(iii) ~~are~~ based on grounds that have a ~~are~~ objectively reasonable basis;
- ~~(iii)~~(iv) consistent with the ~~stated basis of preparation of the prospective financial information and with the~~ entity's recognition and measurement accounting policies as disclosed in section [X] of the document;
- ~~(iv)~~(v) attributable to the underlying event(s) or transaction(s);
- (v) ~~have a reasonable basis; and~~
- (vi) are mathematically correct; and
- ~~(vi)~~ _____
- ~~(e)~~(f) identify whether any material adjustments are necessary to materially reflect the effects of the ~~corporate fundraising fundraising~~ transaction(s) or event(s), and to ensure the prospective financial information is ~~not misleading~~ not materially misstated, and:

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (i) if such an adjustment(s) is required, the assurance practitioner shall discuss the matter with the responsible party; ~~and~~
- (ii) if the adjustment(s) is not made, the assurance practitioner shall consider the implications for the assurance engagement and the assurance report; ~~and~~
- ~~(g)~~ consider whether the prospective financial information reflects the applied criteria;
- ~~(d)~~(h) consider whether the stated basis of preparation for the prospective financial information has been applied incorrectly ~~is not misleading for its intended purpose~~; (Ref. Para. A95) and
- ~~(e)~~(i) where applicable, consider whether the prospective financial information is prepared on a basis that is appropriate in the circumstances and consistent with that of the entity's historical financial information, pro forma historical financial information, or pro forma forecast financial information or historical financial information included in the ~~same~~ document.

~~119.~~ The assurance practitioner's assessment of risk may change during the course of the assurance engagement as additional evidence is obtained. In circumstances where the assurance practitioner obtains evidence from performing further assurance procedures, or if new information is obtained, either of which is inconsistent with the evidence on which the assurance practitioner originally based the assessment, the assurance practitioner shall revise the assessment and modify the further planned assurance procedures accordingly.

~~106-120.~~ The assurance practitioner shall remain alert throughout the engagement for any event(s), condition(s), transaction(s), or error(s) that may:

- (a) cast doubt over the reliability, ~~or~~ accuracy or completeness of the information used as evidence for the prospective financial information, ~~or~~ the underlying assumptions; and/or
- (b) require changes, or additions, to the assurance procedures in order to resolve.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Using the Work of the Responsible Party's ~~an~~ Expert

~~107-121.~~ If information to be used as evidence has been prepared using the work of the responsible party's expert, the assurance practitioner shall use professional judgement to evaluate the significance of that expert's work for the assurance practitioner's purposes.~~the auditor shall evaluate, to the extent necessary, having regard to the significant of that expert's work for the assurance practitioners purposes.~~ When using the work of an expert, the assurance practitioner shall:

(Ref: Para. A98)

- (a) evaluate ~~whether the expert has the necessary~~ the competence, capabilities, ~~and~~ objectivity and independence of that expert for the assurance practitioner's purposes;
- ~~(b)~~ evaluate the expert's independence;
- ~~(c)~~ obtain an sufficient understanding of the field of expertise of the expert in order to evaluate the work of the expert's work;
- ~~(d)~~ evaluate the appropriateness of that determine if the nature, scope and objectives of the expert's work as evidence for the is adequate for the purposes of the assurance engagement, and in accordance with applicable AUASB Standards;⁴⁹
- ~~(e)~~ determine if the expert's work impacts on the assurance practitioner's conclusion; and
- (e) where applicable, determine if the expert has consented to the ~~inclusion~~ inclusion of the expert's report in the document.

Using the Work of the Assurance Practitioners' Expert

~~108-122.~~ If information to be used as evidence has been prepared using the work of the assurance practitioners' expert, the auditor shall evaluate, to the extent necessary, having regard to the significant of that expert's work for the assurance practitioners purposes.~~When~~

⁴⁹ See ASAE 3000 *Assurance Engagements Other than Audits or Reviews of Historical Financial Information*, paragraphs 47-55, and ASA 620 *Using the Work of an Auditor's Expert*.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

using the work of an expert, the assurance practitioner shall: (Ref: Para. A102)

- (a) evaluate whether the expert has the necessary the competence, capabilities, and objectivity of that expert for the assurance practitioner's purposes;
- (b) evaluate the expert's independence;
- (c) ~~(b)~~ [PL2] obtain an sufficient understanding of the field of expertise of the expert in order to evaluate the work of the expert's work;
- (d) ~~(c)~~ evaluate the appropriateness of that determine if the nature, scope and objectives of the expert's work as evidence for the is adequate for the purposes of the assurance engagement, and in accordance with applicable AUASB Standards;⁵⁰
- (e) ~~(d)~~ determine if the expert's work impacts on the assurance practitioner's conclusion; and
- (f) ~~(e)~~ where applicable, determine if the expert has consented to the conclusion inclusion of the expert's report in the document.

Adjustments identified by the Assurance Practitioner

~~109-123.~~ When during the conduct of the assurance engagement a matter comes to the assurance practitioner's attention that causes the assurance practitioner to believe that it is necessary to make a material adjustment to the prospective financial information or the underlying assumptions, for them to be prepared in accordance with the applicable criteria stated basis of preparation preparation, the assurance practitioner shall communicate this matter as soon as practicable to the responsible party. (Ref: Para. A99)

~~110-124.~~ Where the responsible party refuses to make the adjustment, the assurance practitioner shall determine the implications for the

⁵⁰ See ASAE 3000 *Assurance Engagements Other than Audits or Reviews of Historical Financial Information*, paragraphs 47-55, and ASA 620 *Using the Work of an Auditor's Expert*.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~engagement~~for the assurance engagement and the assurance report. (Ref: Para. A105)

Evaluating the Sufficiency and Appropriateness of Evidence Obtained

~~111.125.~~The assurance practitioner shall evaluate whether they have obtained sufficient appropriate evidence⁵¹ on which to express a limited assurance conclusion on the prospective financial information, ~~in the document, including whether:~~

- (Ref: Para. A100)
- ~~(a) — the responsible party's assumptions;~~
 - ~~(b) — have an objectively reasonable basis of preparation;~~
 - ~~(c) — do not include material hypothetical assumptions;~~
 - ~~(i) — are appropriately disclosed in the document, including a clear indication as to whether they are best estimate or hypothetical assumptions;~~
 - ~~(d) — the prospective financial information:~~
 - ~~(e) — is not materially misstated,~~
 - ~~(f) — is properly prepared on the basis of the responsible party's assumptions;~~
 - ~~(i) — is appropriately presented and disclosed in the document; and~~
 - ~~(ii) — if applicable, is prepared on a basis consistent with the entity's historical financial information, including its recognition and measurement accounting policies.⁵²~~

~~112.126.~~If the responsible party's assumptions on which the prospective financial information are based are determined by the assurance practitioner not to be reasonable, the assurance practitioner shall

⁵¹ The concepts and discussions on the sufficiency and appropriates of evidence related to an audit engagement are contained in ASA 500 *Audit Evidence* and may be helpful in evaluating the evidence for corporate fundraising engagements.

⁵² The concepts and discussions on the recognition and measurement accounting principles are contained in AASB's *Framework for the Preparation and Presentation of Financial Statements* (December 2009, as amended) and may be helpful in determining the applicable recognition and measurement principles.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

consider the assumptions to be hypothetical and shall determine the implications ~~for the engagement~~for the assurance engagement and the assurance report, taking into account any applicable law or regulation.⁵³

(Ref: Para. ~~A+X~~)

Other Information included in the document (Ref: Para. ~~A1-A1X~~)

~~113-127.~~ When the document containing the prospective financial information and assurance report includes other information, the assurance practitioner shall request from the responsible party a copy of that document and read its entire contents to identify any material inconsistencies with, or material misstatements of fact in relation to, ~~with the the~~ prospective financial information.

~~114-128.~~ If the assurance practitioner:

- (a) identifies a material inconsistency between the other information and the prospective financial information; or
- (b) becomes aware of a material misstatement of fact in that other information that is related to the prospective financial information; or

~~(b)~~ or

- (c) identifies a potentially misleading or deceptive statement in relation to the prospective financial information;

the assurance practitioner discusses the matter(s) identified with the responsible party and takes further action as appropriate, including determining the implications ~~for the engagement~~for the assurance engagement and the assurance report.

129. If the assurance practitioner and the responsible party agrees to a revision, the assurance practitioner should request an updated copy of the document in order to ensure the revisions have been made.

130. If the responsible party refuses to make the revisions, the assurance practitioner considers whether to:

- (a) obtaining legal advice on the appropriate course of the action for the assurance practitioner;

⁵³ See RG 170.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (b) including in the assurance report an Other Matter paragraph⁵⁴ that describes the material inconsistency and/or misstatement of fact;
- (c) withdrawing consent for the responsible party to include the assurance report in the document; and/or
- ~~(d)~~(a) withdrawing from the assurance engagement, where the withdrawal is possible under applicable law or regulation.

Going Concern Considerations (Ref: Para. A112-A114)

~~115-131.~~ The assurance practitioner shall determine if an assessment of the entity's going concern considerations is relevant to the assurance engagement.⁵⁵ (Ref: Para. A103)

~~116-132.~~ If the assurance practitioner determines that an assessment of the entity's ability to continue as a-going concern is relevant, the assurance practitioner shall perform such an assessment in order to obtain sufficient appropriate evidence regarding the appropriateness of the responsible party's use of the going concern assumption in the preparation of the prospective financial information. (Ref: Para. A104)

~~117-133.~~ If the assurance practitioner concludes the entity is not a going concern, the assurance practitioner shall consider the implications for the engagement~~for the assurance engagement~~ and the assurance report. (Ref: Para. -A106)

Consideration of Events up to the date of the Assurance Report

(Ref: Para. A107)

~~118-134.~~ The assurance practitioner shall consider the impact of any event, transaction, assumption, or error of which they become aware, that may materially impact the prospective financial information, for the time period up to and including the date of the assurance report.

⁵⁴ The concepts and discussion on the use of an Other Matter paragraph relevant to an audit engagement are contained in ASA 706 *Emphasis of Matter Paragraphs and Other Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report*, paragraphs 8-Aus 8.1, and may be helpful in determining its form, content and location in the Investigating Accountant's Report applicable to an assurance engagement.

⁵⁵ The concepts and discussions on the going concern assessment relevant to an audit engagement are contained in ASA 570 *Going Concern*, and may be helpful in performing a going concern assessment in an assurance engagement. Australian Accounting Standard AASB 101 *Presentation of Financial Statements*, paragraphs 25-26 contains relevant guidance on the going concern assessment.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~119.~~—The assurance practitioner shall discuss with the responsible party any such event, transaction, assumption, or error identified in paragraph 134 of this ASAE, with a view to concluding as to whether the ~~is~~ effect on the prospective financial information is material, and needs to be adjusted for and/or disclosed in ~~it~~.

~~120.~~—the prospective financial information;

~~121.~~—the document; and/or

~~122-135.~~the assurance report.

Consideration of Events Identified after the date of the Assurance Report (Ref: Para. A108-~~A+X~~)

~~123-136.~~If the assurance practitioner becomes aware of events, transactions or errors after the date of the issuance of the assurance report and before the relevant date that may have cause the assurance practitioner to amend the assurance report had the assurance practitioner known of them at the date of that assurance report, the assurance practitioner shall:

- (a) discuss such events and/or transactions with the responsible party; and
- (b) consider what further action is appropriate in the engagement circumstances.

~~124-137.~~The assurance practitioner shall revoke any consent previously ~~agreed to or~~ provided, to include the assurance report in the document, if the matter(s) referred to in paragraph's 135 ~~1~~ and/or ~~125-136 of this ASAE~~ are not, in the assurance practitioner's professional judgement, appropriately addressed by the responsible party.

Written Representations (Ref: Para. A118-A120)

~~125-138.~~~~Where the assurance practitioner has not already received written representations from the responsible party in respect of the following matters,~~†The assurance practitioner shall request ~~a~~ written representations ~~letter~~ from the responsible party at the completion of the assurance engagement containing the following: (Ref: Para. A110)

- (a) an acceptance of the assurance engagement letter terms and conditions;

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (b) an acknowledgement that the assurance practitioner's engagement has been conducted in accordance with this ASAE;
- (c) an acknowledgement that the engagement terms included the type of engagement the assurance practitioner would conduct and that a limited ~~of~~ assurance conclusion ~~that~~ would be expressed;
- (d) an acknowledgement of the intended use of the prospective financial information;
- (e) ~~confirmation an acknowledgement~~ of the completeness of ~~the~~ material assumptions used, and the consistency and accuracy of their application in the preparation of the prospective financial information;
- (f) ~~confirmation an acknowledgement~~ that the material assumptions remain appropriate, even though the underlying information may have been accumulated over a period of time;
- ~~(g)~~ confirmation that the going concern basis of preparation of the prospective financial information is appropriate in the document;
- ~~(h)~~ confirmation that there are no material changes to be made to the prospective financial information between the date of the assurance report and the relevant date~~confirmation that there are no material changes to the prospective financial information between the date of the assurance report and the relevant date;~~
- ~~(g)~~(i) an acknowledgement of the responsible party's responsibilities for:
 - (i) the preparation and presentation of the prospective financial information for the periods stated in accordance with the applicable criteria~~based on the underlying assumptions and the specified applicable criteria~~stated basis of preparation;
 - (ii) ~~for~~ determining the applicable time periods to be covered by the prospective financial information;

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (iii) ~~the selection of for the completeness and accuracy of the material best-estimate assumptions used in the preparation of the financial information based on reasonable grounds;~~
- (iv) the preparation and issuance of the document in which the prospective financial information is included;
- (v) all other information that is not the subject of the assurance engagement, but which is included in the document;
- (vi) ~~for disclosing in the document all information required by applicable law or regulation; complying with the requirements of all applicable laws or regulations;~~
- (vii) providing the assurance practitioner with all requested information, including any matter, event, adjustment, assumption, or transaction that may be relevant to the prospective financial information, as well as access to all ~~records, related data, documentation and~~ other information relevant to the prospective financial information requested or necessary for the completion of the engagement;
- (viii) ~~the consistent application of~~ the entity's recognition and measurement accounting policies have been consistently applied to the prospective financial information;
- (ix) ~~for~~ establishing and maintaining an adequate internal control structure in order to facilitate the preparation of reliable prospective financial information;
- (x) advising the assurance practitioner of any matter, event or issue that has arisen or been discovered subsequent to the preparation of the prospective financial information that may impact, or require adjustment to, that prospective financial information;

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (xi) providing the assurance practitioner with a listing of all ~~immaterial adjustments, or~~ known uncorrected ~~immaterial~~ misstatements, that have not been made in the prospective financial information; together with an acknowledgement that they are responsible for ~~confirming~~ ~~concluding~~ that such ~~adjustments-misstatements~~ are immaterial; and

~~(h)~~(j) such other written representations that the assurance practitioner determines ~~is~~ are appropriate in the engagement circumstances.

~~126-139.~~ The date of the representation letter shall be as near as practicable to, but not after, the date of the assurance report. ~~(Ref: Para. 0)~~

~~127-140.~~ The assurance practitioner shall evaluate the representations received from the responsible party for their reasonableness and consistency with other information and evidence obtained. ~~(Ref: Para. A111)~~

~~128-141.~~ If one or more of the requested written representations are not provided, or the assurance practitioner has sufficient doubt about the competence, integrity or reliability of those providing the written representations, the assurance practitioner shall: ~~(Ref: Para. A112-A113)~~

- (a) discuss the matter with the responsible party;
- (b) evaluate the implications ~~on~~ for the reliability of evidence obtained; and
- (c) take appropriate actions, including determining the effect on the assurance conclusion and the assurance report.

Forming the Assurance Conclusion ~~(Ref: Para. 0)~~

~~129.~~ The assurance practitioner shall form a conclusion about ~~whether anything has come to the assurance practitioner's attention that would cause them to believe~~ the prospective financial information, ~~is not, in all material respects, prepared on the stated basis of preparation, the best estimate assumptions and presented fairly on a basis consistent with the accounting policies, as disclosed in the document.~~ In forming that conclusion the assurance practitioner shall consider:

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~130.~~ the assurance practitioner's conclusion in paragraph 125 of this ASAE regarding the sufficiency and appropriateness of evidence obtained; ~~and~~

~~131, 142.~~ ~~an evaluation of whether any uncorrected misstatements are material, individually or in aggregate to the prospective financial information; and~~

~~(a) whether the entity has been consistently applied with, and complied with, the accounting policies adopted and disclosed in the document.~~

~~143.~~ If the assurance practitioner is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate evidence, a scope limitation exists, and the assurance practitioner shall determine whether it is appropriate to continue the ~~assurance engagement~~. If the assurance practitioner has determined it is appropriate to continue ~~the engagement~~ the assurance engagement, the assurance practitioner shall express a qualified conclusion, or disclaimer of conclusion, as appropriate on the prospective financial information.

~~132, 144.~~ The assurance practitioner shall discuss with the responsible party any conclusion that is intended to be modified prior to preparing the assurance report. If the responsible party does not agree to make the necessary changes to appropriately resolve the matter giving rise to the intended modification, the assurance practitioner shall consider the implications for the assurance engagement and the assurance report.

Preparing the Assurance Report

~~133, 145.~~ The assurance practitioner shall provide a written assurance report to the responsible party containing a clear expression of the assurance practitioner's conclusion on the prospective financial information included in the document. (Ref: Para. A116)

~~134, 146.~~ If applicable, the assurance practitioner's conclusion on the prospective financial information shall be clearly separated from other types of financial information within the assurance report. If applicable, the assurance practitioner's conclusion on each type of financial information shall be clearly separated within the assurance report.

(Ref: Para. A117)

Basic Elements of the Assurance Report

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~135-147.~~ The assurance report shall include the following basic elements:

(Ref: Para. A1-A119~~A127~~)

- (a) a title that clearly indicates the report is an ~~independent assurance report~~ assurance report;
- (b) an addressee;
- ~~(e)~~ a scope/background ~~background~~ section that ~~;~~
- ~~(d)~~(c) identifies the purpose of the assurance report; and the fact that it will be included in a specific document;
- (d) a scope section that:
 - (i) identifies the prospective financial information being reported on, including the time period covered;
 - (ii) refers to the section of the document that outlines the ~~applicable criteria~~ stated basis of for the preparation of the prospective financial information;
 - (iii) where applicable, states that the assurance report has been prepared for inclusion in a specific document and, accordingly, is not suitable for any other purpose;
 - (iv) a statement that identifies the entity (s) whose prospective financial information is the subject of the assurance report, and where applicable, and that is subject to the corporate fundraising, and the responsible party;
 - (v) ~~a statement~~ states that the assurance engagement was performed in accordance with this ASAE;
 - (vi) ~~a statement~~ states that the firm of which the assurance practitioner is a member of, applies ASQC 1; and
 - (vii) ~~a statement~~ states that the assurance practitioner has complied with relevant ethical requirements;

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (e) a clearly identified section that details for the prospective financial information:
 - (i) the source of the prospective financial information ~~and that the responsible party is responsible for its preparation, including the best estimate assumptions on which it is based;~~
 - ~~(ii)~~ the specific purpose for which the prospective financial information was prepared, and that the it should not be used for other purposes;
 - ~~(iii)~~(ii) the type of engagement conducted by the assurance practitioner, and that the planned level of assurance was limited; and
 - (iii) ~~an informative summary of assurance procedures performed as to the basis for the assurance practitioner's conclusion on the to obtain evidence supporting the assumptions, amounts and other disclosures in the prospective financial information;~~
- (f) statements by the assurance practitioner that:
 - (i) the engagement did not include:
 - ◇ if applicable, updating any previously audited or reviewed financial information used as the source of the prospective financial information; or
 - ◇ an audit of the prospective financial information;
 - ~~(iv)~~(ii) the prospective financial information does not represent the entity's actual results;
- ~~(f)~~(g) the assurance practitioner's limited assurance conclusion:
 - (i) if the conclusion is unmodified, that nothing has come to the assurance practitioner's attention that causes the assurance practitioner to believe that the best-estimate assumptions do not provide an

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- ~~objectively~~ reasonable basis for the prospective financial information; and ~~and~~
- (ii) in all material respects, the prospective financial information:
- ◇ is not properly prepared on the basis of the best-estimate assumptions as disclosed in section [X] of the document; and
 - ◇ ~~_____~~ does not present fairly ~~the~~ in accordance with the recognition and measurement policies on a basis consistent with the accounting policies adopted by the entity in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework, as disclosed in section [X] of the document; ~~and/or~~
- (iii) the prospective financial information itself is unreasonable; or
- (iv) if the conclusion is modified, provide a clear description of all the reasons for the modification properly described, with the effects appropriately quantified, to the extent reasonably practical, and disclosed in the assurance report;
- ~~(g)~~ _____ a section covering events up to and including the date of the assurance report, that includes a ~~;~~
- ~~(h)~~ _____ statement confirming whether any material transactions or events outside the entity's ordinary business have come to the assurance practitioner's attention that would require comment, or adjustment to, the prospective financial information, and where
- ~~(i)~~ ~~(h)~~ _____ applicable, their potential impact, to the extent it can be reasonably estimated;
- ~~(j)~~ ~~(i)~~ _____ a ~~statement~~s that:
- (i) the actual results are likely to be different from the prospective financial information since anticipated

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

events frequently do not occur as expected and the variation could be material; and/or

- (ii) ~~in the case of prospective financial information prepared on the basis of a projection, that such information has been prepared for a specific purpose, using assumptions that include hypothetical assumptions about future events and the responsible party's actions that are not necessarily expected to occur, and the assurance report should not be used for any other purpose than stated.~~ in the case of prospective financial information that includes hypothetical assumptions, clearly identifies such assumptions and states they have no significant impact on the project outcome;

~~(k)(j)~~ a statement disclaiming the assurance practitioner's responsibility for the achievability of the results indicated by the prospective financial information;

(k) an independence, or disclosure of interest, statement;

(l) an Financial Services Guide, if applicable.

(m) the assurance practitioner's signature;

(n) the date of the assurance practitioner's report that shall be the date the assurance practitioner signs the report; the date of the assurance practitioner's report; and

(o) the assurance practitioner's address.

~~136. If the assurance practitioner is required by law or regulation to use a specific layout or wording in the assurance report, the assurance practitioner shall evaluate whether users might misunderstand the assurance obtained; and if so, whether additional explanation in the assurance practitioner's report can mitigate possible misunderstanding. The assurance practitioner shall not report compliance with this ASAE or other AUASB Standards in the assurance report unless it includes, at a minimum, each of the elements identified in If the assurance practitioner is required by law or regulation to use a specific layout or wording in the assurance report, the assurance report shall refer to compliance with this ASAE, or other ASAEs, only if the assurance report includes, a at a~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

minimum, each of the elements identified in paragraph 147 of this ASAE.

~~137. Unmodified and Modified Conclusions~~

~~138. Unmodified conclusions (Ref: Para. A128)~~

~~139. The assurance practitioner shall express an unmodified conclusion that nothing has come to the assurance practitioner's attention that causes the assurance practitioner to believe that:~~

~~140. the best estimate assumptions do not provide an objectively reasonable basis for the preparation of the prospective financial information; and~~

~~141.148. in all material respects, the prospective financial information is not prepared on the basis of the best estimate assumptions; and is does not presented fairly, on a basis consistent with the accounting policies adopted by the entity and the applicable criteria, as disclosed in section [x] of the document.~~

Modified conclusions (Ref: Para. 0-0A133)

~~142.149.~~ The assurance practitioner shall express a modified conclusion when the following circumstances exist and, in the assurance practitioner's professional judgement, the effect of the matter is or may be material:

~~(a)~~ when the assurance practitioner's conclusion is that:

~~(b)~~ one or more material assumptions do not provide a reasonable basis for the prospective financial information prepared on the basis of best-estimate assumptions, or

~~(c)~~ one or more material assumptions are includes material hypothetical assumptions do not provide a reasonable basis for the prospective financial information given the inclusion of hypothetical assumptions;

~~(d)~~(a) the assurance practitioner shall express an adverse opinion conclusion;

~~(e)~~(b) when the assurance practitioner's conclusion is that the prospective financial information is not free from material misstatement, and/or is misleading. In such cases, the

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

assurance practitioner shall express a qualified conclusion or adverse conclusion;

~~(f)~~(c) when the assurance practitioner's conclusion is the effects, or possible effects, of a matter are not so material or pervasive as to require an adverse conclusion or a disclaimer of conclusion. ~~In such cases,~~ the assurance practitioner shall express a qualified conclusion;

~~(g)~~(d) when there has been a material scope limitation and the possible effect is so pervasive and material that the assurance practitioner concludes that no level of assurance can be provided. ~~In such cases,~~ the assurance practitioner shall express a qualified conclusion or a disclaimer of conclusion; or

~~(h)~~(e) when the assurance practitioner is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate evidence on which to base the conclusion, and the assurance practitioner concludes that the possible effects of the undetected matters, if any, that cause the prospective financial information not to be properly prepared, could be material and pervasive. ~~In such cases,~~ the assurance practitioner shall express a disclaimer of conclusion.

150. If the assurance practitioner expresses a modified conclusion because of a scope limitation, but is also aware of a matter(s) that causes the financial information to be materially misstated, the assurance practitioner shall include in the assurance report a clear description of both the scope limitation and the matter(s) that causes that the prospective financial information to be materially misstated.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Emphasis of Matter Paragraph

~~143-151.~~ If the assurance practitioner concludes that it is necessary to draw users' attention to a matter presented or disclosed in the prospective financial information or the accompanying explanatory notes, on the basis that the matter is of such importance that it is fundamental to users' understanding of the prospective financial information, the assurance practitioner shall include an Emphasis of Matter paragraph in the assurance report.

**Use of Going Concern Assumption Appropriate but a Materially
Uncertainty Exists** (Ref: Para. A120-~~A134~~-A136)

~~144-152.~~ If the assurance practitioner concludes there is a material uncertainty related to events or conditions that individually or collectively may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern, the assurance practitioner shall:

- (a) express a qualified or adverse conclusion, as appropriate, in the assurance report when the responsible party does not make appropriate changes in the document; or
- (b) include an Emphasis of Matter Paragraph in the assurance conclusion when the responsible party makes appropriate changes in the document.⁵⁶

**Consent to the Inclusion of the Assurance Report in a Public
Document** (Ref: Para. A121-A122)

~~145-153.~~ The assurance practitioner shall consider applicable law or regulation when providing consent in writing to the inclusion of the assurance report in ~~another~~ the document.

~~146-154.~~ Where the assurance practitioner considers it inappropriate for the assurance report to be included in the document, consent shall either not be provided, or be revoked prior to the relevant date of the document's release.

⁵⁶ The concepts and discussions on the circumstances under which an emphasis of matter paragraph be in an auditor's report are contained in ASA 706 *Emphasis of Matter Paragraphs and Other Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report* and may be helpful in assisting the assurance practitioner decide if it is appropriate for the assurance engagement relating to corporate fundraisings.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Documentation (Ref: Para. A123-A124)

- ~~155.~~ The assurance practitioner shall prepare documentation on a timely basis.
- ~~156.~~ The assurance practitioner shall prepare documentation that is sufficient to enable an experienced assurance, having no previous connection with the assurance engagement, to understand:
(Ref: Para. X to X)
- ~~(a)~~ the nature, timing and extent of the assurance procedures performed to comply with this ASAE and applicable legal and regulatory requirements;
 - ~~(b)~~ the results of the procedures performed, and the evidence obtained; and
- ~~147.~~ significant matters arising during the assurance engagement, the conclusions reached thereon, and significant professional judgements made in reaching those conclusions. The assurance practitioner shall prepare documentation, on a timely basis, of all matters that provides a record of the basis for the assurance report that is sufficient and appropriate to enable an experienced practitioner, having no previous connection with the engagement to understand:
- ~~(a)~~ the nature, timing and extent of the procedures performed to comply with this ASAE;
 - ~~(b)~~ the results of the procedures performed, and the evidence obtained; and
 - ~~(c)~~ significant matters arising during the engagement, the conclusion reached thereon, and significant professional judgements made in reaching those conclusions.

Pro forma Forecast

- ~~148.~~ Paragraph's 158~~X~~ to 175~~X~~ inclusive of this ASAE deal with ~~additional additional~~ special considerations in the application of ~~historical financial informatio~~ Prospective Financial Information to ~~prospective financial information that has been adjusted by pro forma adjustments. n requirements in paragraph's 10222 to 74~~ inclusive of this ASAE, to financial information in the form of ~~adjustments~~:

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~149.~~ a forecast, that is adjusted for pro forma transactions and associated adjustments; or

~~150-157.~~ a mixture of historical financial information and a forecast; adjusted for pro forma transactions and associated forma adjustments.

~~151.~~ The historical financial information requirements apply to the extent that the pro forma forecast includes historical financial information. For a forecast that does not include pro forma transactions adjustments, and is prepared solely on the basis of the responsible party's assumptions, refer to paragraphs 1(a)(i) to 134 inclusive of this ASAE.

Assurance Engagement Acceptance

Preconditions for Acceptance (Ref: Para. A125)

~~152-158.~~ In addition to the requirements in paragraph's 103 to 104 of this ASAE, the assurance practitioner shall prior to agreeing the terms of the assurance engagement determine whether the applicable financial reporting framework for the preparation of the pro for ma forecast proposed by the responsible party is acceptable.

~~153-159.~~ The assurance practitioner shall obtain agreement from the responsible party that it acknowledges and understands its responsibility for the preparation and presentation of the pro forma forecast based on:

- (a) assumptions that have reasonable grounds and not on the basis of material hypothetical assumptions, and
- (b) pro forma adjustments. (Ref: Para. A140X)

Other Factors Affecting Engagement Acceptance

~~154-160.~~ The assurance practitioner shall comply with the requirements in paragraph's 105 to 107 of this ASAE.

Agreeing on the Terms of the Assurance Engagement

~~155-161.~~ The assurance practitioner shall comply with the requirements in paragraph's 108 to 109 of this ASAE.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Planning the Assurance Engagement

Planning Activities

~~156-162.~~ In addition to the requirements in paragraph 113 to 117 of this ASAE, the assurance practitioner's planning considerations shall include obtaining an understanding of the basis for the pro forma ~~transactions and associated~~ adjustments made to the prospective financial information.

(Ref: Para. ~~Error! Reference source not found.~~X)

~~the nature of the base financial information, and, if applicable, whether it has been previously audited or reviewed, and the type of opinion issued~~**Performing the Engagement**

Assurance Procedures

~~157-163.~~ In addition to the requirements in paragraph's 118 ~~to and~~ 120~~38~~ of this ASAE, the assurance practitioner shall design and perform the following procedures on the pro forma forecast: ~~(Ref: Para. Error! Reference source not found. Error! Reference source not found.)~~

- (a) consider the reasonableness and appropriateness of the applicable criteria and time period covered by the pro forma forecast;
- (b) determine whether the pro forma ~~transactions and associated~~ adjustments are:
 - (i) in accordance with the entity's recognition and measurement accounting policies disclosed in section [X] of the document; and
 - (ii) attributable to the underlying event(s) or transaction(s);
- (c) determine whether the resultant pro forma forecast reflects the results of applying the pro forma ~~transactions, adjustments and assumptions~~ to the prospective financial information;
- (d) whether the pro forma forecast disclosures in the document ~~in the document~~ are consistent with the assurance practitioner's understanding; and

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

(e) ~~whether the stated basis of preparation for the pro forma forecast is not misleading for its intended purpose; and~~

~~(f)~~(e) where applicable, the pro forma forecast is prepared on a basis that is ~~appropriate and~~ consistent with that of the entity's historical financial information, ~~historical or~~ pro forma historical financial information; or prospective financial information included in the document.

Using the Work of the Responsible Party's Expert

164. The assurance practitioner shall comply with the requirements in paragraph 121 of this ASAE.

Using the Work of the Assurance Practitioner's Expert

165. The assurance practitioner shall comply with the requirements in paragraph 122 of this ASAE.

Adjustments Identified by the Assurance Practitioner

166. The assurance practitioner shall comply with the requirements in paragraph's 123 and 124 of this ASAE.

Evaluating the Sufficiency and Appropriateness of Evidence Obtained

167. The assurance practitioner shall comply with the requirements in paragraph's 125 and 126~~X to X~~ of this ASAE. (Ref: Para. ~~Error!~~ ~~Reference source not found.~~)

Other Information Included in the Document

168. The assurance practitioner shall comply with the requirements in paragraph's 127 to 130 of this ASAE. (Ref: Para. ~~Error!~~ ~~Reference source not found.~~X)

Going Concern Considerations

169. The assurance practitioner shall comply with the requirements in paragraph's 131 to 133 of this ASAE. (Ref: Para. ~~X~~~~Error!~~ ~~Reference source not found.~~)

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Consideration of Events up to the date of Assurance Report

170. The assurance practitioner shall comply with the requirements in paragraph's 134 to 135 of this ASAE. (Ref: Para. ~~X~~~~Error! Reference source not found.~~)

Consideration of Events after the date of Assurance Report

171. The assurance practitioner shall comply with the requirements in paragraph's 136 to 137 of this ASAE. (Ref: Para. ~~Error! Reference source not found.~~X)

- (g) ~~the responsible party's assumptions:~~
- ~~(i) have an objectively reasonable basis of preparation;~~
 - ~~(ii) do not include any material hypothetical assumptions;~~
 - ~~(iii) are appropriately disclosed in the document, including a clear indication as to whether they are best estimate or hypothetical assumptions;~~
- (h) ~~the pro forma forecast:~~
- ~~(i) is not materially misstated;~~
 - ~~(ii) is properly prepared on the basis of the responsible party's assumptions, and in accordance with the pro forma transactions and associated adjustments, as described in the document;~~
 - ~~(iii) is appropriately presented and disclosed in the document;~~
 - ~~(iv) if applicable, is prepared on a basis appropriate and consistent with the entity's pro forma historical or historical financial information; and~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~(v) presented fairly in accordance with the recognition and measurement accounting policies disclosed in the document.~~

Written Representations

~~158-172.~~ In addition to the requirements in paragraph ~~s~~ 138~~54~~ to 141 of this ASAE, the assurance practitioner shall request the responsible party to include in the written representation letter an acknowledgement of the responsible party's responsibilities for:

- (a) the preparation and presentation of the pro forma forecast based on the underlying assumptions and the ~~specified applicable criteria~~ applicable criteria;
- (b) ~~for~~ determining the applicable time periods to be covered by the pro forma forecast; and
- (c) selecting and applying the pro forma ~~transactions and associated~~ adjustments used in the preparation of the pro forma forecast.

Forming the Assurance Conclusion

~~159-173.~~ In addition to the requirements in paragraph ~~s~~ -142 ~~and~~ 143~~58~~ of this ASAE, the assurance practitioner shall form a conclusion on the pro forma forecast. In forming the ~~conclusion~~ conclusion, the assurance practitioner shall consider the assurance practitioner's conclusion in paragraph ~~Error! Reference source not found.~~ X of this ASAE regarding the sufficiency and appropriateness of evidence obtained.

Preparing the Assurance Report

174. The assurance practitioner shall comply with the requirements in paragraph's 145 and 146 of this ASAE. (Ref: Para. X)

Basic Elements of the Assurance Report

~~160-175.~~ In addition to the requirement in paragraph ~~s~~ 145 to 148~~63~~ of this ASAE, the assurance report on pro forma forecast, shall include the following:

- (a) statements in the ~~scope/background~~ background section that:

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (i) identifies the pro forma forecast being reported on, including the time period covered;
 - (ii) refers to the section of the document that outlines the ~~applicable criteria~~ stated basis of ~~used in the~~ preparation of the pro forma forecast;
 - (iii) refers to the section of the document which includes the relevant disclosures that explain the basis of preparation of the pro forma forecast;
- (b) a clearly identified section that details for the pro forma forecast:
- (i) the source of the prospective financial information used for the pro forma forecast, and whether it has been previously audited or reviewed;
 - (ii) that the responsible party is responsible for the source of the prospective financial information and the pro forma forecast, including any best-estimate assumptions on which it is based;
 - ~~(iii) explains the source of the financial information used as the basis for the pro forma forecast, including whether it is a forecast, or a mixture of historical financial information and a forecast;~~
 - ~~(iv) the specific purpose for which the pro forma forecast was prepared, and that it should not be used for other purposes;~~
- (c) statements by the assurance practitioner that:
- (i) the engagement did not include:
 - ◇ if applicable, updating any previously reviewed financial information that may have been used in the preparation of the pro forma forecast; or
 - ◇ an audit of the pro forma forecast;
 - (ii) the pro forma forecast does not represent a forecast of the entity's actual results;

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (d) the assurance practitioner's limited conclusion:
- (i) if the conclusion is unmodified, that nothing has come to the assurance practitioner's attention that causes the assurance practitioner to believe that:
 - (ii)(i) the best-estimate assumptions, including the applicable criteria, do not provide an objectively reasonable basis for the pro forma forecast; and
 - ◇ In all material respects, the pro forma forecast is not properl
 - ◇ y prepared, on the basis of the best-estimate assumptions as disclosed in section [X] the document, and the pro forma ~~transactions and associated~~ adjustments as disclosed in section [X] of the ~~at~~ document; ~~and~~
 - ◇ does not presents fairly, the pro forma forecast in accordance with the recognition and measurement accounting policies adopted by the entity in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework, except for, assumptions necessary to comply with the stated basis of preparation ~~accordance with the recognition and measurement accounting policies adopted by the entity~~ as disclosed in section [X] of the document; and
 - ◇ the pro forma forecast is unreasonable; or
~~or~~
 - (i) if the conclusion is modified, includes a clear description of all the reasons for the modification properly described, with the effects appropriately quantified, to the extent reasonably practical ~~practical~~, and disclosed in the assurance report.
 - (ii)(i) _____

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Modified Conclusions

176. The assurance practitioner shall comply with the requirements in paragraph's 149 to 152 of this ASAE. (Ref: Para. X)

Use of the Going Concern Assumption Appropriate but a Material Uncertainty exists

177. The assurance practitioner shall comply with the requirements in paragraph 152 of this ASAE. (Ref: Para. X)

Consent to the Inclusion of the Assurance Report in a Public Document

178. The assurance practitioner shall comply with the requirements in paragraph's 153 and 154 of this ASAE. (Ref: Para. ~~Error! Reference source not found.~~X)

Documentation

179. The assurance practitioner shall comply with the requirements in paragraph's 155 and 156 of this ASAE. (Ref: Para. ~~Error! Reference source not found.~~X)

Proper Compilation of Pro Forma Financial Information

Engagement Acceptance

Preconditions for Acceptance (Ref: Para. A130)

180. ~~In addition to the requirements in paragraph 23 of this ASAE, T~~the assurance practitioner shall prior to agreeing the terms of the assurance engagement to report on the proper compilation of pro forma financial information included in ~~thea~~ document, determine whether ~~the engagement~~the applicable financial reporting framework for the proper compilation of the pro forma financial information proposed by the responsible party assurance engagement is acceptable.

~~181.~~181. In addition to the requirements in paragraph 24 of this ASAE, The assurance practitioner shall ~~and~~ obtain agreement from the responsible party:

- (a) that it acknowledges and understands its responsibility for:

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- ~~(i)~~ adequately disclosing and describing the applicable criteria to the intended users if these are not publicly available;
- ~~(ii)~~ compiling the pro forma financial information on the basis stated;
- ~~(iii)~~ the preparation of the base financial information to the extent applicable;
- ~~(i)(iv)~~ the assurance practitioner's role does not involving taking responsibility for the compilation of the pro forma financial information;
- ~~(ii)(v)~~ the selection of the time period covered by of the pro forma financial information; and
- ~~(iii)(vi)~~ for the selection, development and application of the applicable criteria used in the proper compilation process, and the adequate disclosures of such criteria in the document; and
- ~~compiling the pro forma financial information on the basis stated; and~~

(b) that it will provide the assurance practitioner with:

- (i) access to all information (including, where required, information of acquirees in a business combination), such as records, documentation and other material, relevant to the proper compilation of the pro forma financial information;
- (ii) ~~such~~ additional information that the assurance practitioner may request from the responsible party for the purpose of the assurance engagement;
- (iii) access to those within the entity and the entity's advisors from whom the assurance practitioner determines it necessary to obtain evidence relating to the proper compilation of the pro forma financial information; and

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (iv) where ~~applicable~~required, access to appropriate individuals within acquirees in a business combination.

Other Factors Affecting Engagement Acceptance

~~162-182.~~ In addition to the requirements in paragraph's 25 to 27 of this ASAE, the assurance practitioner shall accept ~~the engagement~~the assurance engagement only when:

- (a) on the basis of a preliminary knowledge of the assurance engagement circumstances and discussion with the responsible party, the assurance practitioner is able to determine that it is unlikely that the compilation of the pro forma financial information will be misleading for the purpose for which it is intended~~materially misstated; and~~
- (b) the assurance practitioner has a reasonable expectation of obtaining the information necessary for the engagement~~for the assurance engagement;~~
- (c) the prescribed ~~opinion~~conclusion wording specified by applicable law or regulation, if any, to determine that the assurance practitioner will likely be able to express the ~~opinion~~conclusion so prescribed based on performing the procedures specified in this ASAE; and
- ~~(b)~~(d) where applicable law or regulation requires ~~the~~-base financial information used in the compilation process to have been previously audited or reviewed, that such an audit or review has occurred, and an auditor's report or review conclusion issued.

Agreeing on the Terms of the Assurance Engagement

~~163-183.~~ In addition to the requirements in paragraphs' 28 and 29 of this ASAE, the agreed terms of the assurance engagement shall include the following assurance practitioner responsibilities: (Ref: Para. A131)

- (a) the assurance practitioner will provide limited assurance on the proper compilation of the pro forma financial information;

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (b) the assurance practitioner will determine whether the applicable criteria selected by the responsible party is suitable; and
- (c) the assurance practitioner is responsible for performing assurance procedures on the proper compilation of the pro forma financial information to determine if it has been ~~prepared~~ compiled in accordance with the basis stated.

Changes in the Terms of the Assurance Engagement

~~164.~~ The assurance practitioner shall comply with the requirements in paragraph's 30 to 32 of this ASAE. (Ref: Para X)

~~165-184.~~ Planning the Assurance Engagement

Planning Activities

~~166-185.~~ The assurance practitioner shall obtain an understanding of:
(Ref: Para. A132-A137)

- (a) the nature of the entity and where applicable, any acquiree or divestee including:
 - (i) their operations;
 - (ii) their assets and liabilities;
 - (iii) the way they are structured and how they are financed; and
 - ~~(iv)~~ relevant industry, legal and regulatory and other external factors pertaining to the entity and any acquiree or divestee;
- (b) the event(s) or transaction(s) in respect of which the pro forma financial information is being compiled;
- (c) the responsible party's compilation of the pro forma financial information; ~~the nature of the source financial information, the compilation process, the pro form adjustments made, and the presentation of the pro forma financial information~~;

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~(e)~~(d) whether the entity has had an prior audit or review conducted in respect of its historical financial information;
and

~~(d)~~(e) the applicable financial reporting framework, and the accounting and financial reporting practices of the entity and of any acquiree or divestee, including - adopted by the entity and of any acquiree or divestee, including their selection and application of accounting policies.

~~167.~~186. The procedures planned to be performed during ~~the engagement~~the assurance engagement depend on the assurance practitioner's professional judgement, having regard to the assurance practitioner's understanding of the nature of the entity, the event(s) or transaction(s) in respect of which the pro forma financial information has been compiled, materiality considerations with respect to the proper compilation of the pro forma financial information, and other relevant engagement circumstances. (Ref: Para. A138)

Performing ~~the Engagement~~the assurance engagement

Assurance Procedures

~~168.~~187. The assurance practitioner shall design and perform the following procedures on the proper compilation of the pro forma financial information:

(a) determine whether the responsible party has used an appropriate source of the base financial information; (Ref: Para. A1-A144)

~~(a)~~(b) determine whether the source of the base financial information has been audited or reviewed:

(i) if it has been previously audited or reviewed, ~~and if so,~~ determine the type of opinion expressed; (Ref: Para. A1-A141) or

(ii) if there has been no audit or review, the assurance practitioner shall perform procedures to be satisfied that the source of the base financial information is appropriate; (Ref: Para. A142)

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- ~~(b)~~ determine whether the source of the base financial information has been extracted from an appropriate source; ~~(Ref: Para. A1-A163)~~
- (c) determine whether the responsible party has identified the appropriate ~~the~~ pro forma adjustments necessary to illustrate the impact of the event or transaction at the date or for the period of the illustration;
- ~~(e)~~(d) determine whether the pro forma adjustments are in accordance with the basis stated. This shall include determining whether the pro forma adjustments and are:
adjustments are: ~~(Ref: Para. A145-A146)~~
- (i) are directly attributable to the underlying event(s) or transaction(s);
- (ii) are factually supportable. If acquiree or divestee financial information is included in the pro forma adjustments and there is no audit or review report on the source of such financial information, the assurance practitioner shall perform procedures to be satisfied that the financial information is factually supportable;
- ~~(iii)~~ are ~~give appropriate effect to the stated basis;~~
- ~~(iv)~~(iii) consistent with the entity's recognition and measurement accounting policies and applicable financial reporting framework and its accounting policies under that framework;
- ~~(v)~~(iv) captures all adjustments necessary to illustrate the material impact of the event(s) or transaction(s) at the date, or for the stated time period; and
- ~~(vi)~~(v) are arithmetically correct;
- ~~(d)~~ and in accordance with the basis stated;
- ~~(e)~~ the pro forma column reflects the proper application of the pro forma adjustments to the base financial information, resulting in pro forma financial information that is properly compiled;

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (f) ~~assess whether the applicable criteria used in the basis stated is =(Ref: Para. A167)~~
- (g) ~~consistently applied~~ consistent and do not conflict with relevant law or regulation; and
- (h)(e) ~~unlikely to result in pro forma financial information that is misleading~~ misstated. ~~=(Ref: Para. A148)~~
- (i)(f) ~~evaluate the overall presentation of the pro forma financial information. This shall include consideration, including consideration~~ of:
(Ref: Para. A149)
- (i) ~~the overall presentation and structure of the pro forma financial information, including whether it is clearly distinguished from other financial information;~~
- (ii) ~~whether the pro forma financial information and related explanatory notes illustrate the impact of the event(s) or transaction(s) in a manner that is not misleading; and~~
- (iii) ~~whether appropriate disclosures are provided with the pro forma financial information to enable the intended users to understand the information conveyed~~ whether the assurance practitioner has become aware of any significant events subsequent to the date of the source of the ~~unadjusted~~ base financial information that may require reference to, or disclosure in, the pro forma financial information; and
- (g) ~~obtain a copy of the document containing the pro forma financial information, and read and consider the other information included in that document to identify material inconsistencies, if any, with the pro form financial information.~~

188. If a modified audit opinion or review conclusion has been expressed with respect to the source of the ~~unadjusted~~ base financial information or the source of the acquiree or divestee financial information, the assurance practitioner considers applicable law or

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

regulation in evaluating what further action to take and: (Ref: Para. A150)

- (a) discusses the matter with the responsible party;
- (b) considers the potential consequences of such an opinion on the proper compilation of the pro forma financial information; and
- (j)(c) considers whether there is any effect on the assurance practitioners' ability to report in accordance with the terms of the assurance engagement, including any effect on the assurance practitioners' report.
procedurespractitionerinformationformaadjustments

Adjustments identified by the Assurance Practitioner

~~169-189.~~ If, on the basis of the procedures performed, the assurance practitioner identifies that the responsible party has: (Ref: Para. A152)

- (a) used a source of the base financial information that is not appropriate; or
- (b) omitted a pro forma adjustment that should be included, or inappropriately applied a pro forma adjustment;
- (b)(c) included in the document a material inconsistency or misstatement of fact between the pro forma financial information and the other information included in the document;

the assurance practitioner shall discuss the matter with the responsible party. If corrections of the matter are necessary and the responsible party assurance practitioner is unable to refuses to make such corrections, agree with the responsible party as to how the matter should be resolved, the assurance practitioner shall determine the implications for the engagement and the assurance report.

Evaluating the Sufficiency and Appropriateness of Evidence Obtained

~~170-190.~~ The assurance practitioner shall evaluate whether they have obtained sufficient appropriate evidence on which to express an assurance conclusion on the proper compilation of the pro forma financial information, including whether it: (Ref: Para. A151)

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (a) is free from material omissions or inappropriate application of any element thereof; and
- (b) contains adequate disclosure of the applicable criteria used in the basis stated.

Written Representations

~~171-191.~~ 191. In addition to the requirements in paragraph 57 of this ASAE, the assurance practitioner shall request the responsible party to include in the written representation letter an acknowledgement of their responsibility for: (Ref: Para. A153)

- ~~(a)~~ (a) the compilation of the pro forma financial information ~~has been identified;~~ has identified;
- ~~(b)~~ (a) ~~the identification of~~ all appropriate pro forma adjustments necessary to illustrate the impact of the event or transaction at the date, or for the time period, of the illustration;
- ~~(c)~~ (b) the omission of any pro forma adjustments from the compilation of the pro forma financial information because they are not in accordance with the basis stated and such omission does not render the pro forma financial information ~~misleading/misstated;~~ misleading/misstated; and
- ~~(d)~~ (c) the ~~proper compilation of the~~ pro forma financial information ~~has been properly compiled~~ has been properly compiled to reflect all the significant effects of the event(s) or transaction(s), and in a way that does not result in the pro forma financial information being ~~misleading/misstated.~~ misleading/misstated.

Evaluating the Sufficiency and Appropriateness of Evidence Obtained (Ref: Para. A31)

192. The assurance practitioner shall evaluate whether they have obtained sufficient appropriate evidence on which to express an limited or reasonable assurance conclusion, as appropriate, about the compilation of the pro forma financial information being:

- (a) free from material omissions; and

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

(b) adequately refers to, or describes and discloses, the applicable criteria.⁵⁷

Forming the Assurance Conclusion

~~172.~~ The assurance practitioner shall form ~~the a~~ conclusion about whether the pro forma financial information has been properly compiled by the responsible party ~~on the basis stated~~ based on the applicable criteria. In forming the conclusion, the assurance practitioner shall consider ~~;~~

~~193.~~ the assurance practitioner's conclusion in paragraph 191~~39~~ of this ASAE regarding the sufficiency and appropriateness of evidence obtained for the level of assurance required.

~~;~~ and

~~whether the pro forma financial information has been properly compiled on the stated basis.~~

Preparing the Assurance Report

Basic Elements of the Assurance Report

~~173.~~~~194.~~ The assurance report shall include the following basic elements:

- (a) a title that clearly indicates that the report is an ~~independent assurance report~~ assurance report;
- (b) an addressee(s), as agreed in the terms of engagement;
- (c) a ~~scope/background~~ background section that identifies
 - (i) the pro forma financial information;
 - ~~(ii)~~ the source of the base financial information, whether it has been audited or reviewed, and the type of opinion expressed;
 - ~~(iii)~~ (ii) a statement that the responsible party is responsible for compiling the pro forma financial information on the basis stated;

⁵⁷ The concepts and discussions on the sufficiency and appropriates of evidence related to an audit engagement are contained in ASA 500 *Audit Evidence* and may be helpful in evaluating the evidence for corporate fundraising engagements.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~(iv)~~(iii) the time period covered by, or the date of, the pro forma financial information; and

~~(v)~~(iv) a reference to the applicable criteria in accordance with which the compilation of the pro forma financial information has been performed, and the source of the applicable criteria;

~~(d)~~ a statement states that the responsible party is responsible for compiling the pro forma financial information on the basis stated;

~~(e)~~(d) a statement that the assurance engagement was performed in accordance with this ASAE;

a statement that the firm of which the assurance practitioner is a member applies ASQC 4;

a statement that the assurance practitioner has complied with relevant ethical requirements;

a clearly identified section that details:

whether the base financial information has been previously audited or reviewed by another assurance practitioner, and the type of opinion expressed;

the source of the base financial information;

a statement that the responsible party is responsible for the preparation of the pro forma financial information;

the type of engagement conducted by the assurance practitioner, the level of assurance and the type of conclusion planned;

an informative summary of assurance procedures performed as the basis for the assurance practitioner's conclusion;

~~(f)~~(e) a description of the assurance practitioner's responsibilities, including statements that:

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (i) describe the type of engagement conducted by the assurance practitioner, the level of assurance and the type of conclusion planned;
- ~~(i)~~(ii) the assurance practitioner's responsibility is to express an ~~opinion~~-conclusion about whether the pro forma financial information has been properly compiled by the responsible party on the basis stated;
- ~~(i)~~(iii) for purposes of this engagement:
- ◇ the assurance practitioner is not responsible for updating or reissuing any reports or opinions on any base financial information used in the compilation of the pro forma financial information; and
 - ◇ the assurance practitioner has not performed an audit or review of the pro forma financial information itself, nor, in the course of this engagement, performed an audit or review of the financial information used in compiling the pro forma financial information;
- ~~(g)~~(f) a statement states that the assurance engagement was performed in accordance with this ASAE;
- ~~(h)~~(g) a statement states that the firm of which the assurance practitioner is a member ~~of~~, applies ASQC 1;
- ~~(i)~~(h) a statement states that the assurance practitioner has complied with relevant ethical requirements;
- ~~(j)~~(i) a clearly identified section that details statements that:
- (i) the engagementthe assurance engagement to report on the proper compilation of pro form financial information involves performing procedures to obtain evidence about whether:
 - ◇ the responsible party has an appropriate basis for presenting the significant effects

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

directly attributable to the event or transaction;

◇ the related pro forma adjustments give appropriate effect to that identified basis; and

◇ the pro forma ~~column~~ financial information reflects the proper application of those adjustments to the ~~unadjusted~~ base financial information;

(ii) the procedures selected depend on the assurance practitioner's judgement, having regard to the assurance practitioners' understanding of the nature of the entity, the event or transaction in respect of which the pro forma financial information has been compiled, and other relevant engagement circumstances; and

(iii) the engagement~~the assurance engagement~~ also involves evaluating the overall presentation of the pro forma financial information;

(i) whether the base financial information has been previously audited or reviewed by another assurance practitioner, and the type of opinion expressed;

(ii) the source of the base financial information;

(iii) a statement that the responsible party is responsible for the preparation of the pro forma financial information;

(iv) the type of engagement conducted by the assurance practitioner, the level of assurance and the type of conclusion planned;

(v) an informative summary of assurance procedures performed as the basis for the assurance practitioner's conclusion;

~~(k)~~(j) the assurance practitioner's conclusion;

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

(i) in the case of a limited assurance engagement:

- ◇ with an unmodified conclusion, that, based on the procedures performed, nothing has come to the attention of the assurance practitioner that causes the assurance practitioner to believe that the pro forma financial information is not properly compiled, in all material respects, by the responsible party on the basis stated; or
- ◇ with a modified conclusion a clear description of all the reasons for the modification properly described, with the effects appropriately quantified, to the extent reasonably practicable and disclosed in the assurance report; or

(ii) in the case of a reasonable assurance engagement:

- ◇ with an unmodified conclusion, that the pro forma financial information is properly compiled, in all material respects by the responsible party on the , in accordance with basis stated; or
- ◇ with a modified conclusion, a clear description of all the reasons for the modification properly described, with the effects appropriately quantified quantified, to the extent reasonably practical, and disclosed in the assurance report;

~~(j)~~(k) a section covering events up to and including the date of the assurance report:

- (i) including a statement confirming whether any material transactions or events outside the entity's ordinary business have come to the assurance practitioner's attention that would require comment, or adjustment to, the pro forma financial information, or cause it to be misleading or deceptive; and

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (ii) if applicable, their potential impact;
- ~~(m)~~(l) an independence, or disclosure of interest, statement;
- ~~(n)~~(m) the assurance practitioner's signature;
- ~~(o)~~(n) the date of the assurance practitioner's report that shall be the date the assurance practitioner signs the report~~the date of the report~~; and
- ~~(p)~~(o) the assurance practitioner's address.

* * *

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Application and Other Explanatory Material

Type of Assurance (Ref: Para. 8)

- A1. ~~The assurance practitioner ordinarily undertakes and reports on financial information related to a Assurance engagements involving corporate fundraisings, or the examination of prospective financial information, are ordinarily conducted by the assurance practitioner with a view in order to to expressing a limited assurance conclusion. A limited assurance engagement consists of making enquiries, primarily of the responsible party and applying analytical and other review procedures. Assurance engagements related to the reporting on the proper compilation of financial information may be conducted in order to express either a limited or reasonable assurance conclusion. It may bring significant matters relating to the financial information reasonable assurance engagement.~~
- A2. ~~This However, there is nothing in this ASAE does not to preclude the assurance practitioner from using professional judgement to undertake and report in conducting an assurance engagement on financial information related to a fundraising in order with a view to expressing a reasonable assurance conclusion. This type of conclusion requires a higher degree of work to be performed in order to provide a higher level of assurance in respect of the financial information. Engagements involving historical financial information ordinarily express a reasonable assurance conclusion, however non-historical financial information (for example, pro forma forecast and prospective financial information), by nature, are ordinarily conducted with a view to expressing a limited assurance conclusion. Consequently, assurance practitioners do not ordinarily agree to express a reasonable assurance conclusion on engagements involving any type of financial information other than historical financial information. Assurance engagements involving a may opine a reasonable assurance conclusion, however non-historical sourced financial information (for example, ppro forma forecast or prospective financial information) Reasonable assurance can also be expressed on the proper compilation of pro forma financial information); by nature, are would ordinarily conducted with a view to expressing a not be included in an assurance engagement where the assurance practitioner is requested to express a limitedreasonable assurance conclusion.~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Non-Assurance Services (Ref: Para.9)

- A3. The assurance practitioner may agree to, and provide non-assurance services in connection with the agreed terms of engagement. Non-assurance services do not result in an assurance conclusion being expressed by the assurance practitioner;⁵⁸ and consequently are not within the scope of this ASAE. The assurance practitioner may decide that such non-assurance services may be included in a separate engagement letter from the assurance services, or combined into a single engagement letter.
- A4. Examples of non-assurance services that may be performed by the assurance practitioner include:
- (a) the preparation and issuance of a Materiality Letter to an entity's due diligence committee ~~(DDC)~~ related to the ~~corporate~~ fundraising;
 - (b) participation in the ~~entity's due diligence committee~~ ~~DDC~~ ~~in the capacity of the assurance practitioner~~; and
 - (c) agreed upon procedures engagements, where no assurance conclusion is expressed (for example, a report of factual findings in respect of subsets of financial information included in the public document or ~~the other~~ document; or earnings per share calculations).⁵⁹

Historical Financial Information

Engagement Acceptance

Preconditions for Acceptance (Ref: Para. 23)

- ~~A5. The assurance practitioner discusses with the responsible party their requirements from the responsible party in order for the assurance practitioner to accept the engagement. Once the requirements are agreed, the assurance practitioner is able to issue a written engagement letter.~~ The responsible party is ultimately responsible for the preparation and presentation of all information (including any assumptions and applied criteria used as the basis for the historical financial information) in the document. The responsible party may

⁵⁸ Refer *Framework for Assurance Engagements* (April 2010) for further guidance on the elements of an assurance engagement (Para. 20) and consulting engagements (paragraphs 12-Aus 16.1).

⁵⁹ See ~~AUS 904~~ ASRS 4400 ~~Agreed-Upon Procedures~~ issued by the ~~Au~~ UASB.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

engage other experts (for example, tax advisors, business advisors, or legal counsel) who may prepare, assist with the preparation, or provide independent advice on, the information included in the document; however it is the responsible party who retains responsibility for such information. The only exception to this being that the responsible party is not responsible for the content of reports prepared by other parties/~~experts which~~experts, which are included, by consent, in the document.

~~A6-A5.~~

Other Factors Affecting Engagement Acceptance

~~A7-A6.~~ The assurance practitioner ~~should be satisfied, based on preliminary knowledge that the assurance engagement has a rational~~should not accept an assurance engagement purpose. ~~Examples where this may not be the case include~~ (Ref: Para. 25(c)~~25~~)

~~(a) unless the assurance practitioner is satisfied that there is the engagement has a rational purpose. Examples where this may not be the case include:~~

~~(b)(a) if there will be is a significant limitation on the scope of the assurance practitioner's work; or~~

~~(c)(b) if engagement circumstances lead the assurance practitioner to believe that the responsible party intends to associate the assurance practitioner's name with the financial information in an inappropriate manner. and~~

~~A7.~~ If the responsible party is not also the engaging party, the assurance practitioner ordinarily considers the effect this may have on their ability to access records, documentation and other information that may be needed by the assurance practitioner to complete the assurance engagement.

~~(d) if the assurance practitioner, or assurance practitioner's firm does not have the necessary qualifications, or, where applicable, license to perform the particular engagement type, for example, those performed under the Corporations Act 2001,⁶⁰ and other law or regulation that may be applicable.⁶¹ ;~~

⁶⁰ For example, an Australian Financial Service License.

⁶¹ For example, those prescribed by ASIC policy statements and practice notes.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- A8. In circumstances where the assurance practitioner is a member of a firm which is also providing to the entity ~~other~~ non-assurance services in respect of the document, the assurance practitioner should consider relevant ethical requirements (including independence), and the requirements of applicable law, regulation or professional standards when considering whether to accept the assurance engagement. Examples of non-assurance services commonly provided include participation in the entity's due diligence committee, ~~the~~ preparation of taxation information and other consulting services. The provision of such non-assurance services by the assurance practitioner is not within the scope of this ASAE.⁶² (Ref: Para. 27)

Agreeing on the Terms of the Assurance Engagement

- A9. Acknowledgement by the responsible party in writing via acceptance of the assurance engagement letter provides evidence that the appropriate relationship exists, that ~~it~~ the responsible party accepts its responsibilities, and establishes a basis for a common understanding of the responsibility of each party. It also avoids misunderstandings of the agreed terms. The responsible party who is requested to sign the assurance engagement letter should be the ultimate responsible party of the entity, or an authorised representative/officer thereof, recognising that in certain circumstances, the directors of the entity (being those charged with governance) may not be appointed by the stage of agreeing the terms of the assurance engagement or the entity may not be in existence when the assurance engagement commences (for example, a new company structure). In such cases, the assurance practitioner considers whether to update and re-issue the assurance engagement letter terms for a change of responsible party. (Ref: Para. 2728)
- A10. In the absence of a written acknowledgement of responsibility by the responsible party, via acceptance of the assurance engagement letter, the assurance practitioner should consider whether it is appropriate to accept the assurance engagement. Accepting the assurance engagement may be appropriate when, for example, other sources, such as applicable law, regulation, or a contract, acknowledge, or indicate, such responsibility in sufficient detail the terms of the assurance engagement. For example, under the *Corporations Act*

⁶²—Refer APES 350 *Participation by members in public practice in due diligence committees in connection with a public document* (January 2011), issued by the Accounting Professional and Ethical Standards Board

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

2001,⁶³ the directors of an entity are deemed responsible for the financial information included in a public document used in offering securities. ~~In such cases, the assurance practitioner should state the application law or regulation that applies, and that the responsible party acknowledges and understands its responsibilities as set out in paragraph 23;~~

~~A11. The terms of the assurance engagement letter ordinarily includes: (Ref: Para. 28)~~

- ~~(a) an introductory section that covers the assurance practitioner's understanding of the terms of the assurance engagement including:
 - ~~(i) the time period covered, the source of the historical financial information, and the type of document the historical financial information will appear in and for who and what purpose it has been prepared;~~
 - ~~(ii) the nature of the underlying transaction(s) or event(s) giving rise to the assurance engagement;~~
 - ~~(iii) a statement that the assurance practitioner is independent of the responsible party, and of the historical financial information;~~~~
- ~~(b) outline of the scope of the assurance engagement:
 - ~~(i) that assurance procedures will be performed on the historical financial information in order for the assurance practitioner to be able to issue a particular assurance conclusion; and~~
 - ~~(ii) confirmation that the engagement will be conducted in accordance with this ASAE and if applicable, particular law or regulation (for example the *Corporations Act 2001*) and ethical and other pronouncements of professional bodies to which the assurance practitioner adheres;~~~~

~~A12-A11. details, by type of financial information, of procedures that will be performed. The assurance practitioner exercises professional~~

⁶³ See Section 717 of the *Corporations Act 2001* for an overview of the procedures for offering securities.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

judgement ~~as to what in determining what specific assurance~~ procedures are summarised in ~~the engagement~~the assurance engagement letter, ~~taking into account the nature of the financial information, and the assurance engagement circumstances, taking into account the nature of the historical financial information, and the engagement circumstances.~~ Examples of procedures that could be ~~included detailed~~ are:

- (a) — analytical review procedures;
- ~~(b)(a) — comparisons of consistency in the application of recognition and measurement principles contained in the applicable financial reporting framework as compared to the accounting policies adopted by the entity in the preparation of the historical financial information, and disclosed in the document;~~
- ~~(e)(b) — review and consideration of key work papers, accounting records and other documents prepared by the responsible party and other experts; and~~
- ~~(d)(c) — enquiry of, and discussion with, the responsible party, those charged with governance, management, those charged with governance, management, experts, and other parties related to the historical financial information;~~
- (d) — examination, on a test basis, of evidence supporting the historical financial information, including its basis of preparation; and
- ~~(e) — comparisons of consistency in the application of recognition and measurement principles contained in the applicable financial reporting framework as compared to the accounting policies adopted by the entity in the preparation of the historical financial information, and disclosed in the document.;~~
- ~~(f) — a statement that the assurance practitioner is not performing an audit, and accordingly no audit opinion will be expressed on the historical financial information;~~
- ~~(g) — whether the assurance practitioner will have sufficient access to all required financial information and other information in order to form the assurance conclusion;~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (h) — details of the type of wording to be included in the assurance opinion and the assurance conclusion;
- (i) — confirmation that the assurance practitioner will issue an assurance report relating to the historical financial information for inclusion in the document;
- (j) — confirmation that the assurance practitioner will rely on the fact that the responsible party is responsible for:
- (k) — the preparation and presentation of the historical financial information,
- (l) — for the document within which the financial information is included; and
- (m) — issuing the document;
- (n) — the expectation that the responsible party will provide written representations;
- (o) — agreement from the responsible party;
- (p) — to make available to the assurance practitioner historical financial information and any accompanying other information in time to allow the assurance practitioner to complete the engagement in accordance with the proposed timetable; and
- (q) — to inform the assurance practitioner of factors that may affect the assurance report, of which the responsible party may become aware during the time period from the date of the assurance report is issued up to the relevant date to the date it is issued;
- (r) — documented important deadlines/timelines for the completion of the assurance engagement. This may include deadlines such as the expected date of publication of the document and when the assurance practitioner's consent is required;
- (s) — arrangements regarding the planning and performance of the assurance engagement; including the composition of the assurance engagement team (including any experts);

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (t) — arrangements for the assurance practitioner to:
- (u) — attend meetings such as the due diligence committee meetings (if appropriate under the terms of the assurance engagement);⁶⁴
- (v) — receive draft and final versions of the document in a timely manner when requested;
- use the service(s) of the responsible party's experts and/or the assurance practitioner's experts;
- (w) — provide consent to the inclusion of the assurance practitioner's report in the document; and
- (x) — communicate directly with the entity's external auditor and/or other professional advisers regarding matters relevant to the historical financial information;
- (y) — the form and context of any published consent that the assurance practitioner has agreed to include in the document. For example, in respect of public documents prepared in accordance with the *Corporations Act 2001*⁶⁵ and lodged with the Australian Securities and Investments Commission (ASIC) entities intending to distribute the document in both electronic and paper form, must also obtain the assurance practitioner's consent in both forms as well;⁶⁶ and
- (z) — a request for the responsible party to acknowledge receipt of the assurance engagement letter and to agree to the terms of the assurance engagement contained in the letter.
- (e) — The responsible party who signs the engagement letter should be the ultimate responsible party of the entity, or an authorised representative/officer thereof, recognising that in certain circumstances, the directors of the entity (being those charged with governance) may not be appointed by the stage of agreeing the terms of the assurance engagement or the entity may not be in existence when the engagement

⁶⁴ — See APES 350 *Participation by Members in Public Practice in Due Diligence Committees in Connection with a Public Document* (December 2009), issued by the Accounting Professional and Ethical Standards Board.

⁶⁵ — See Section 716 of the *Corporations Act 2001*.

⁶⁶ — See ASIC Regulatory Guide 107 *Electronic Prospectuses*.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

commences (for example, a new company structure). In such cases, the assurance practitioner should consider whether to update and re-issue the engagement letter terms for a change of responsible party.

A12. The assurance practitioner may include such terms and conditions as in their professional judgement are appropriate to the assurance engagement. They may include:

- (a) documented important deadlines/timelines for the completion of the assurance engagement. This may include deadlines such as the expected date of publication of the document and when the assurance practitioner's consent is required;
- (b) arrangements regarding the planning and performance of the assurance engagement, including the composition of the assurance engagement team (including any experts);
- (c) arrangements for the assurance practitioner to:
 - (i) attend meetings such as the due diligence committee meetings (if appropriate under the terms of the assurance engagement);⁶⁷
 - (ii) receive draft and final versions of the document in a timely manner when requested; and
 - (iii) use the service(s) of the responsible party's experts and/or the assurance practitioner's experts; and
 - (iv) communicate directly with the entity's external auditor and/or other professional advisers regarding matters relevant to the historical financial information.

A13. The form and context of any published consent that the assurance practitioner has agreed to include in the document; for example, in respect of public documents prepared in accordance with the Corporations Act 2001⁶⁸ and lodged with the Australian Securities and Investments Commission (ASIC) entities intending to distribute

⁶⁷ See APES 350 *Participation by Members in Public Practice in Due Diligence Committees in Connection with a Public Document* (December 2009), issued by the Accounting Professional and Ethical Standards Board.

⁶⁸ See Section 716 of the *Corporations Act 2001*.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

the document in both electronic and paper form, the responsible party must also obtain the assurance practitioner's consent to the inclusion of their report in both forms of the document.⁶⁹

~~A13. The assurance practitioner ordinarily negotiates the specific the form and context of any published consent that the assurance practitioner has agreed to include in the document with the responsible party's legal advisors. For example, in respect of public documents that are prepared in accordance with the Corporations Act 2001⁷⁰ and intended to be lodged with the Australian Securities and Investments Commission (ASIC), the form of the consent must reflect the public documents' for entities intending to distribute the document in both electronic and paper form, must also obtain the assurance practitioner's consent in both forms as well.~~⁷¹

~~A14.~~

~~A15.A14. Appendix 2 provides an illustrative example engagement letter for an assurance engagement, relating to historical financial information in respect of relate to a corporate fundraising.~~

Changes in the Terms of the Assurance Engagement ~~(Ref: Para. 34)~~

A15. Examples of when requests from the responsible party may be received include a change to reflect a change in circumstances affecting the need for the service, a misunderstanding of the nature of the assurance services to be provided. The assurance practitioner considers the justification for the proposed change on the conduct and reporting of the assurance engagement, as well as any evidence that was obtained prior to the change, prior to the assurance practitioner agreeing to the change. Changes that may be unacceptable to the assurance practitioner include: (Ref: Para. 30-31~~34~~)

- (a) a change that relates to historical financial information that is incorrect, incomplete or otherwise unsatisfactory;
- (b) limiting time available to perform the assurance engagement; preventing access to all relevant documents or persons requested; and/or

⁶⁹ See ASIC Regulatory Guide 107 *Electronic Prospectuses*.

⁷⁰ See Section 716 of the *Corporations Act 2001*.

⁷¹ See ASIC Regulatory Guide 107 *Electronic Prospectuses*.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- ~~(c) not providing documents when requested, leading to time constraints that make the satisfactory completion of the assurance engagement by the date required unachievable.~~

~~A16. It is important that all changes agreed to by the responsible party and the assurance practitioner be documented in writing to ensure no misunderstanding between the parties of what has been agreed. Any change in agreed terms proposed by the responsible party throughout the assurance engagement should be appropriately justified to the assurance practitioner's satisfaction before the assurance practitioner agrees to the changes. Examples of when requests from the responsible party may be received include a change to reflect a change in circumstances affected affecting the need for the service, or a misunderstanding of the nature of the assurance services to be provided. The assurance practitioner considers the implications of the proposed change on the conduct and reporting of the assurance engagement, as well as any evidence that was obtained prior to the change.~~

~~A17. A change in circumstances that affects the entity's requirements or a misunderstanding concerning the nature of the service originally requested, may be considered a reasonable basis for requesting a change in the engagement.~~

~~A18. Certain proposed changes to the agreed terms by the responsible party that may be unacceptable to the assurance practitioner, and ordinarily would not be justified or agreed to include:~~

- ~~(a) a change that affects the intended users' needs, or a misunderstanding concerning the nature of the assurance engagement;~~
- ~~(b) a change that relates to historical financial information that is incorrect, incomplete or otherwise unsatisfactory; or~~
- ~~(c) limiting time available to perform the engagement; preventing access to all relevant documents or persons requested; or~~
- ~~(d) not providing documents when requested, leading to time constraints that make the satisfactory completion of the assurance engagement by the date required unachievable.~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~A19.A16. It is important that all changes agreed to by the responsible party and the assurance practitioner be documented and approved in writing to ensure no misunderstanding of what has been agreed.~~

Planning the Assurance Engagement

~~A20.A17. Planning the assurance engagement ordinarily involves obtaining an understanding of ~~the nature of~~ the historical financial information, its preparation, and other assurance engagement circumstances to identify and understand events and transactions that may have a significant impact on the historical financial information, or on the assurance report. The assurance practitioner is required to use professional judgement to determine the extent of the understanding that is needed of the nature of the historical financial information and other assurance engagement circumstances.⁷² The assurance practitioner ordinarily considers whether that understanding is sufficient to assess the risks that the historical financial information may be materially misstated. (Ref: Para. 1)~~

Planning Activities

~~A18. The type of planning activities the assurance practitioner performs depends on the level of understanding of the entity the assurance practitioner may already have. Such an understanding may have been obtained from prior audit or review engagements performed. If this is the case, the assurance practitioner would ordinarily have acquired an understanding of the entity and its operations. This understanding would ordinarily include knowledge of the entity's management skills and resources, information technology systems (including financial systems). This understanding would need to be updated to ensure it had not changed in the current time period. It could then be used, for example, to provide a measure for assessing the reasonableness of the best-estimate assumptions used in the preparation of the historical financial information. Note that in certain engagement circumstances, the assurance practitioner may not be able to obtain such a detailed understanding. For example, in takeover or merger fundraising transaction, the assurance practitioner may not be able to access one of the entity's financial information, other than that available in the public domain. Hence,~~

⁷² The concepts and discussions on complete set of financial statements relevant to an audit engagement are contained in ASA 200 *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance with Australian Auditing Standards*, paragraph Aus 13.1, and may be helpful in determining the components of a complete set of financial statements applicable to an assurance engagement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

the level of understanding will be necessarily more limited, as will the nature of the assurance conclusion.

A19. If the assurance practitioner does not have an prior understanding of the entity, the following planning activities assist the assurance practitioner in determining the nature, timing and extent of procedures to be performed:

- (a) understanding whether the entity is in a start-up phase, or has been in operation for a number of years. If the entity is in start-up phase, the assurance practitioner ordinarily expands their planning activities so as to be able to obtain sufficient knowledge and understanding of the entity; and
- (b) understanding the nature and type of entity including its size, complexity, ownership and regulatory structure, strategies, industry, key products/services, competitors, regulatory environment, management structure, and financial resources.

A20. Understanding the historical financial information involves:

- (a) understanding the source of the historical financial information (audited/reviewed financial information or otherwise), and whether any of the source information has been subject to a prior audit or review;
- (b) understanding the applied criteria developed, selected and used by the responsible party to meet their requirements in the preparation of the historical financial information. As detailed in ASAE 3000,⁷³ the applied criteria ordinarily has particular characteristics that the assurance practitioner is able to use in their evaluation of whether the applicable criteria has been applied by the responsible party. These characteristics include relevance, completeness, reliability, neutrality, and understandability; (Ref: Para. 115(g))
- (c) understanding the basis of preparation of the historical financial information (including the extent to which statistical, mathematical and computer-assisted techniques are used) and comparisons between this and the most recently audited or reviewed historical financial information;

⁷³ See ASAE 3000, paragraphs 35-39 (inclusive).

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (d) obtaining an understanding of whether comparative information is to be included in the document, and whether it will be restated;
 - (e) identifying relevant financial information available in the public domain; and
 - (f) developing expectations for use when performing analytical procedures.
- A21. Materiality is ordinarily considered in terms of both quantitative and qualitative factors, such as relative magnitude, the nature, and extent of the effect of these factors on the assurance practitioner's evaluation of the historical financial information, and the intended users interests.⁷⁴ In determining materiality, the assurance practitioner uses professional judgement to understand and assess these factors and how they might influence the decisions of intended users of the historical financial information in evaluating the entity's prospects.
- ~~A21. Assurance engagement risk comprises inherent risk, control risk and detection risk and the assurance practitioner considers these risk components in terms of the assurance engagement circumstances; in particular the nature of the financial information and whether a reasonable or limited assurance conclusion is sought. These considerations are then reflected in the extent of the planned procedures to be performed and the evidence-gathering process. The agreed terms of the individual engagement determine the nature, timing and extent of procedures to be performed by the assurance practitioner. The following planning activities assist the assurance practitioner in this process: (Ref: Para. 34)~~
- A22. The extent of the assurance practitioner's understanding of the entity (which may have been gained from experience in conducting the prior audit(s) or review(s) of its financial report(s)):
- A23. whether the entity is in a start-up phase, or has been in operation for a number of years. If the entity is in start-up phase, the assurance practitioner ordinarily expands their planning activities so as to be able to obtain sufficient knowledge and understanding in order to meet the requirements of the assurance engagement and this ASAE;

⁷⁴ The concepts and discussions on establishing materiality relevant to an audit engagement are contained in ASA 320 *Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit*, which may be useful to assurance practitioners when determining materiality in the conduct of an assurance engagement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- A24. — the size and complexity of the entity including its ownership, management structure, and financial resources;
- A25. — the nature and extent of its operations, industry type, and geographical locations in which it trades;
- A26. — the economic and economic environment within which it operates including whether its business is cyclical or seasonal;
- A27. — applicable law and regulation primarily affecting its operations;
- A28. — industry specific accounting practices;
- A29. — key accounting practices/policies used which have a material impact on the entity's financial reporting results (for example asset valuations, taxation) and its applicable financial reporting framework;
- A30. — its key strategies for establishing and maintaining profitable operations;
- A31. — the types of audit or review report conclusions previously issued by the entities' entities' auditors;
- A32. — the type of adjustments made to the historical financial information of the entity, if any. For example, to restate the provision accounts or depreciation charges; and
- A33. — whether the assurance practitioner has previously performed an audit or review of the entity's previous period financial reports:
- A34. — if this is the case, the assurance practitioner would ordinarily have acquired an understanding of the entity and its operations. This understanding would include knowledge of the entity's management skills and resources, information technology systems (including financial systems). This understanding would need to be updated to ensure it has not changed in the current time period; or
- A35. — if this is not the case, the assurance practitioner ordinarily expands their planning activities so as to be able to obtain sufficient knowledge and understanding in order to meet the requirements of this ASAE.
- A36. — obtaining an understanding of the historical financial information, appropriate to the engagement;

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- A37. ~~understanding the source of the historical financial information (audited/reviewed financial information or otherwise), and whether any of the source information has been subject to a prior audit or review;~~
- A38. ~~i~~In certain engagement circumstances however, the assurance practitioner does not need to obtain a detailed understanding of all of the historical financial information. For example, where the engagement relates to a takeover or merger transaction, where the assurance practitioner has no access to the one of the party's ~~ies~~ financial information, or other entity to be merged, as appropriate, other than that available in the public domain;
- A39. ~~understanding the applicable criteria used and time period covered;~~
- A40. ~~understanding the requirements of applicable law or regulation; if any~~
- A41. ~~understanding the significant accounting policies, used by the entity in the preparation of the historical financial information, particularly recognition and measurement policies; including the process for their selection and application;~~
- A42. ~~obtaining an understanding of whether comparative information is to be included in the document, and whether it will be restated;~~
- A43. ~~reading minutes of meetings and other documentation (such as key contracts tors or agreements) supporting key decisions or issues that impact the engagement;~~
- A44. ~~obtaining an understanding of the other information included in the document to assess whether it is consistent with the historical financial information;~~
- A45. ~~developing expectations for use when performing analytical procedures;~~
- A46. ~~the nature and extent of experts or other specialised skills involvement required for the engagement.⁷⁵ An expert may be internal (a partner or staff in the assurance practitioner's firm or network firm) or external to the firm. There may be circumstances~~

⁷⁵ The concepts and discussions on using the work of experts relevant to an audit engagement are contained in ASA 620 *Using the Work of an Auditor's Expert*, and may be useful to assurance practitioners when determining their responsibilities when using the work of experts in assurance engagements.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~when the assurance practitioner may require the services of an expert, particularly when obtaining sufficient appropriate evidence to support the assurance practitioner's conclusion. For example, when determining the suitability of applicable criteria used by the responsible party in preparing the historical financial information;~~

~~A47. the nature, timing, and extent of communications that will be required with the responsible party, and third party experts, and other advisors;~~

~~A48. materiality considerations and assessments. However, ordinarily materiality is considered in terms of both quantitative and qualitative factors, such as relative magnitude, the nature, and extent of the effect of these factors on the assurance practitioner's evaluation of the financial information, and the intended users' interests.⁷⁶~~

~~A49. In determining materiality, the assurance practitioner needs to use professional judgement to understand and assess these factors, and how they might influence the decisions of intended users of the historical financial information in evaluating the prospects of the entity.~~

~~A50. Materiality considerations reduce the risk of expressing an inappropriate conclusion.~~

~~A51. A22. Refer Appendix 3 for examples of the quantitative and qualitative factors of materiality.~~

~~(a) assurance engagement risk. This risk comprises inherent risk, control risk and detection risk⁷⁷ and the assurance practitioner considers these risk components in terms of the assurance engagement circumstances; in particular the nature of the historical financial information and whether a reasonable or limited assurance conclusion is sought. These considerations are then reflected in the extent of the~~

⁷⁶ The concepts and discussions on establishing materiality relevant to an audit engagement are contained in ASA 320 *Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit*, and which may be useful to assurance practitioners when determining materiality in the conduct of an assurance engagement.

⁷⁷ The concepts and discussions on assurance engagement risk relevant to an audit engagement are contained in ASA 315 *Identifying and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement through Understanding the Entity and Its Environment*, which and may be useful to assurance practitioners when determining assurance engagement risk in the conduct of an assurance engagement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~planned procedures to be performed and the evidence-gathering process.~~

~~(b) — Fraud risk considerations (where applicable).~~

~~A52. — As detailed in ASAE 3000,⁷⁸ the suitability of the applied criteria used by the responsible party ordinarily has particular characteristics that the assurance practitioner is able to use in their evaluation of whether the applicable criteria has been applied by the responsible party. These characteristics include relevance, completeness, reliability, neutrality, and understand ability. When dealing with historical financial information prepared for use in a corporate fundraising, the responsible party ordinarily develops specific criteria to meet their requirements. (Ref: Para. 35(h))~~

Reliance on the work of another Assurance Practitioner (Ref: Para. 36)

~~A53. A23. The assurance practitioner should consider whether to request reliance on the work of another assurance practitioner, in respect of previously issued audit or review reports on historical financial information, and then to what extent such reliance should be taken. The assurance practitioner considers: Ordinarily, another assurance practitioner will not permit reliance to be placed on their assurance report (regardless of whether it is an audit report or review report), as the report was prepared and issued for another purpose other than that thaoft the current subject to the current assurance engagement. In these cases, the assurance practitioner needs to consider what additional assurance procedures may be required to to be planned and performed in order to obtain sufficient and appropriate evidence on the base financial information.⁷⁹ The assurance practitioner should therefore consider the extent (if any) to which reliance can be placed on the work of the other assurance practitioner, taking into account:~~

- ~~(a) Whether the assurance practitioner can obtain access to the audit working papers.~~
- ~~(b) Whether the other assurance practitioner permits reliance to be placed on the work. Such permission should be formally acknowledged in writing. If such reliance is not permitted,~~

⁷⁸ — See ASAE 3000, paragraphs 35-39 (inclusive).

⁷⁹ — The concepts and discussions on placing reliance on the work of another auditor relevant to an audit engagement are contained in ASA 620 *Using the work of an Auditor's Expert and ASA 600 Special Considerations—Audit of a Group Financial Report (Including the Work of Component Auditors)* which may be useful to assurance practitioners when determining the extent, if any, of such reliance in the conduct of an assurance engagement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~the assurance practitioner would need to reconsider the level of reliance, if any, the assurance practitioner is able to place on the base financial information, including whether they could conclude it has been prepared in accordance with Australian Accounting Standards and/or stated the accounting policies of the entity.~~

- (c) The purpose for which the other work was performed.
- (d) Audit materiality levels set.
- (e) Audit approach taken.
- (f) Audit differences (if any) identified.
- ~~(g) Type of opinion expressed in the auditor's report, and if applicable, reasons for a modified opinion.~~
- (h) Whether the assurance practitioner is able to conclude that the base financial information has been prepared in accordance with the Australian Accounting Standards and/or the stated accounting policies of the entity.

~~A54.A24. Even if the assurance practitioner requests the other assurance practitioner to permit reliance on their previously issued assurance report by the assurance practitioner for the purpose of the current assurance engagement, it is often the case that the other assurance practitioner will not permit such reliance. This is due to their assurance report being prepared and issued for a purpose other than the subject of the current assurance engagement. In the absence of the assurance practitioner being able to place reliance, the assurance practitioner needs to carefully consider what additional assurance procedures are required to be planned and performed on the source financial information used in the preparation of the historical financial information, in order to obtain sufficient and appropriate evidence necessary for the assurance engagement.⁸⁰~~

Performing ~~the Engagement~~the assurance engagement

Assurance Procedures

⁸⁰ The concepts and discussions on placing reliance on the work of another auditor relevant to an audit engagement are contained in ASA 620 *Using the work of an Auditor's Expert and ASA 600 Special Considerations - Audit of a Group Financial Report (Including the Work of Component Auditors)* which may be useful to assurance practitioners when determining the extent, if any, of such reliance in the conduct of an assurance engagement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

A25. The assurance procedures ordinarily involve performing analytical review of the historical financial information, enquiries of the responsible party and other relevant parties, and obtaining evidence. Where the assurance practitioner identifies matters requiring further investigation, further assurance procedures are designed and performed, to reduce assurance engagement risk to an appropriate level.

A55:A26. The extent of procedures and evidence required depends on the agreed terms of the assurance engagement and the type of assurance to be obtained. When designing and performing assurance procedures, the assurance practitioner considers the adequacy, relevance and reliability of the information obtained to be used as evidence.⁸¹ The nature, timing and extent of procedures and evidence required depends on the agreed terms of the assurance engagement, the type of assurance to be obtained, and the assurance practitioner's professional judgement. The assurance practitioner ordinarily performs the following assurance procedures involved ordinarily include: (Ref: Para. 04)

- (a) assessing the suitability of the recognition and measurement accounting policies used as applicable criteria for the preparation of the historical financial information;
- (b) assessing the appropriateness and suitability of any adjustments made compared to the applicable criteria;
- ~~(e)~~ — if comparative information is included, to ÷
- ~~(d)~~ — compare its basis of preparation how it is prepared against the entity's previously audited or reviewed historical financial information; and
- ~~(c)~~ — ensure any restatements made are appropriate;
- ~~(e)~~(d) performing analytical procedures;
- ~~(f)~~ — reviewing other relevant financial information available in the public domain for consistency with the historical financial information;

⁸¹ The concepts and discussions on obtaining evidence relevant to an audit engagement are contained in ASA 500 *Audit Evidence* which may be useful to assurance practitioners when determining the extent of the evidence required to be obtained in the conduct of an assurance engagement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- ~~(g) assessing applicable internal control over the information systems used to capture and record the historical financial information, and the expertise of the persons responsible for these systems;~~
- ~~(h) evaluating the materiality of items within the financial information in terms of both qualitative and quantitative factors;~~
- ~~(i)(e) making enquires of the responsible party, other experts and relevant parties;~~
- ~~(j)(f) reviewing the entity's work papers, accounting records and other documents;~~
- ~~(k)(g) developing expectations for use when performing analytical procedures;~~
- ~~(l) designing and performing further assurance procedures, if required, to reduce assurance engagement risk to an appropriate level; and~~
- ~~(m) evaluating evidence, including the reasonableness of the responsible party's oral and written representations; and~~
- ~~(n) the adequacy of historical financial information disclosures included in the document.~~

~~A56-A27.~~ When the assurance practitioner obtains oral representations from the responsible party in respect of matters supporting the financial information, the assurance practitioner ordinarily: (Ref: Para. 1)

- ~~(a) EeEvaluates their reasonableness and consistency with other evidence obtained, including other representations.;~~
- ~~(b) CeConsiders whether those making the representations can be expected to be well informed on the particular matters.;~~
- ~~(c) OeObtains appropriate corroborative evidence.;~~⁸² ~~and~~

⁸² The concepts and discussions on corroborative evidence relevant in investigating unusual fluctuations relevant to an audit engagement are contained in Auditing ASA 520 *Analytical Procedures*, and may be helpful in determining appropriate corroborative evidence in an assurance engagement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

(d) ~~D~~D documents the key aspects of the oral representation.

~~A57.~~A28. If ~~the engagement~~the assurance engagement terms include the assurance practitioner performing a review of the historical financial information, the nature, timing, and extent of review procedures to be carried out may be influenced by various factors, including: (Ref: Para. 38)

~~(a)~~— if the entity's financial report has already been audited or reviewed, and if so;

~~(b)~~— whether the audit or review was conducted in accordance with Australian Auditing Standards; and

~~(c)~~(a) whether a modified opinion was expressed in the auditor's report;

~~(d)~~(b) whether the historical financial information included in the document is consistent with that of the prior period audited or reviewed historical financial information. For example, such comparatives may have been restated and/or adjusted by the responsible party to ensure consistency of basis of preparation. There may also be cases where the omission of comparatives may be appropriate when a major event or transaction (e.g. restructuring) has occurred since the comparative time period);

~~(e)~~(c) whether the source (an audited or reviewed financial report) and time period covered by the historical financial information is appropriate under the applicable criteria. The evaluation of the appropriateness of the source and the time period used should include an assessment of whether there are any inconsistencies with the applicable criteria;

~~(f)~~(d) whether the preparation of the historical financial information is consistent with the recognition and measurement ~~requirements~~principles in of Australian Accounting Standards (or other applicable financial reporting framework);

~~(g)~~(e) whether there is a need to make adjustments previously considered immaterial in the prior period audit or review of the financial report;

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~(h)~~(f) responses by the responsible party, the entity's management, the entity's external auditor (if another assurance practitioner audited the financial report) and other experts, to enquiries made by the assurance practitioner.⁸³ Such enquiries may relate to whether there were:

- (i) any changes in accounting policies, financial reporting practices and other reporting requirements that occurred during the time period under examination;
- (ii) any adjustments required to convert the basis of the financial report presentation from an overseas jurisdiction's generally accepted accounting principles to Australian Accounting Standards (or other applicable Australian reporting framework);
- (iii) any unadjusted audit differences from the most recently audited or reviewed financial report that may be material for the purposes of the document;
- (iv) the treatment of any provisions and other significant accounting estimates (such as asset revaluations) in the financial report; and
- (v) any significant transactions with related parties, such as assets that have been purchased from an associated entity.

~~A58. During the assurance engagement, information may come to the assurance practitioner's attention that differs significantly from the information on which the risk assessment was based. In such circumstances, the risk assessment may not appropriately reflect the true circumstances of the entity and the further planned assurance~~

⁸³ The concepts and discussions on using the work of another auditor or internal auditor relevant to an audit engagement are contained in Auditing Standard ASA 600 *Special Considerations-Audits of a Group Financial Report (including the Work of Component Auditors)* and Auditing Standard ASA 610 *Using the Work of Internal Auditors* which may be helpful in considering the work of other auditors applicable to an assurance engagement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~procedures may not be effective in detecting material misstatements.~~⁸⁴ (Ref: Para. 39)

Using the Work of ~~the~~ *Responsible Party's* ~~an~~ Expert (Ref: Para. 41)

~~A59.~~A29. The assurance practitioner ~~needs to~~ considers the following when evaluating the work of the ~~, when using the work of an assurance practitioner's responsible party's~~ expert ~~the following~~:

- (a) the nature of the matter, and the risks of material misstatement to which the expert's work relates;
- (b) the significance of that expert's work in the context of the assurance engagement;
- (c) the assurance practitioner's knowledge of and experience with previous work performed by that expert;
- (d) the extent of review of the expert's work by the assurance practitioner; and
- (e) the results/findings of the experts' work, and whether it is to be included in the document.

Adjustments identified by the Assurance Practitioner

~~A60.~~A30. The assurance practitioner should communicate to the responsible party matters relating to the historical financial information, that in their professional judgement require the responsible party to make a material adjustment to the historical financial information. Such communications may be made orally or in writing, and should be done as soon as the matter is identified to enable the responsible party to investigate the matter(s). The responsible party is then able to advise the assurance practitioner of their findings and provide supporting evidence, as well as their decision on whether they will make the adjustment to the historical financial information. The assurance practitioner is then able to evaluate the evidence provided to consider if the responsible party's ~~sies~~ decision on the adjustment is acceptable to the assurance practitioner. (Ref: Para. 43)

⁸⁴ ~~The concepts and discussions on responding to assessed risks relevant to an audit engagement are contained in Auditing Standard ASA 330 *The Auditor's Responses to Assessed Risks* which may be helpful in considering the work of other auditors applicable to an assurance engagement.~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~A61. In circumstances where the responsible party does not make adjustment and the assurance practitioner disagrees with the decision, the assurance practitioner should consider the implications for the assurance report. (Ref: Para. 44)~~

Evaluating the Sufficiency and Appropriateness of Evidence Obtained (Ref: Para. 1-1)

~~A62-A31.~~ The assurance practitioner uses professional judgement in determining the sufficiency and appropriateness of the evidence obtained based on the procedures performed. The quantity of evidence obtained by the assurance practitioner that is in quantity is a measure of the sufficiency of the evidence, whilst the quality of the evidence obtained is a measure of its appropriateness; that is, its relevance and its reliability.⁸⁵

~~A63-A32.~~ If the assurance practitioner identifies that the historical financial information may be materially misstated, and hence or its disclosure in the document is potentially misleading, the assurance practitioner carries out additional procedures, or performs more extensive procedures to enable the assurance practitioner to form a conclusion, including whether a modified conclusion is required.

~~A64. For the purposes of expressing a limited assurance conclusion, the assurance practitioner obtains sufficient appropriate evidence primarily through enquiry and analytical procedures on the historical financial information to be able to draw conclusion.~~

Other Information included in the document (Ref: Para. 46-47)

Material Inconsistencies

~~A65. Material inconsistencies in other information that come to the assurance practitioner's attention may raise doubt about the conclusions drawn from evidence previously obtained and possibly, about the basis for the assurance practitioner's conclusion in the assurance report. Assurance practitioners need to pay particular attention to the form and content of the other information (for example if it is in graphical or table form) when looking for inconsistencies. When discussing an apparent material misstatement of fact with the responsible party, the assurance practitioner may not~~

⁸⁵ The concepts and discussions on evidence relevant to an audit engagement are contained in Auditing Standard ASA 500 *Audit Evidence*, and may be helpful in determining the evidence applicable to an assurance engagement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

be able to sufficiently evaluate the validity of certain information and the responsible party's responses to the assurance practitioner's enquiries, and may conclude that valid differences of opinion or judgement exist. Assurance practitioners need to pay particular attention to:

- A66. ~~the form and content of the other information (for example if it is in graphical or table tabular form);~~
- A67. ~~summarised financial information and its cross referencing and consistency with the financial information which is the subject of the assurance report;~~
- A68. ~~other financial information such as asset values in other expert's' reports;~~
- A69. ~~other information such as related party disclosures;~~
- A70. ~~management discussion and analysis of the historical financial information;~~
- A71. ~~the adequacy of disclosures in relation to around the assumptions used in the historical financial information;~~
- A72. ~~the purpose and terms context of the document issue, such as the nature and amount of the securities involved, their value and rights as well as any minimum subscription; and~~
- ~~A73-A33. forward looking qualitative statements on the entity's prospects.~~
- A74. ~~If the assurance practitioner identifies material inconsistencies between the historical financial information and the other information, the assurance practitioner discusses the inconsistency with the responsible party, and determines whether the historical financial information and/or the other information needs to be revised.~~
- A75. ~~If the assurance practitioner and the responsible party agrees to the revision, the assurance practitioner requests an updated copy of the document in order to ensure the revisions have been made.~~
- A76. ~~If the assurance practitioner considers that revisions to the other information are necessary due to a material inconsistency, and the~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

responsible party refuses to make the revisions, the assurance practitioner considers:

- (a) obtaining legal advice;
- (b) including in the assurance report an Other Matter paragraph⁸⁶ that describes the material inconsistency; or
- (c) where applicable, withdrawing consent to include the assurance report in the document; or
- (d) withdrawing from the assurance engagement, where the withdrawal is possible under applicable law or regulation.

Material Misstatement of Fact

~~A77. When discussing an apparent material misstatement of fact with the responsible party, the assurance practitioner may not be able to sufficiently evaluate the validity of certain information and the responsible party's responses to the assurance practitioner's enquiries, and may conclude that valid differences of opinion or judgements exist.~~

~~A78. The assurance practitioner needs to consider the nature of the identified material misstatement in terms of its possible impact on the historical financial information, and other information included in the document, including whether it gives rise to a risk of a material omission, or misleading or deceptive statement in the document. Further action that the assurance practitioner may take in making their assessment includes:~~

- ~~(a) obtaining legal advice on the appropriate course of the action for the assurance practitioner;~~
- ~~(b) including in the assurance report an Other Matter paragraph⁸⁷ that describes the material misstatement of fact;~~

⁸⁶ The concepts and discussion on the use of an Other Matter paragraph relevant to an audit engagement are contained in ASA 706 *Emphasis of Matter Paragraphs and Other Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report*, paragraphs 8 Aus 8.1, and may be helpful in determining its form, content and location in the Investigating Accountant's Report applicable to an assurance engagement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- ~~(c) withdrawing consent for the responsible party to include the assurance report in the document; or~~
- ~~(d) withdrawing from the assurance engagement, where such withdrawal is possible under applicable law or regulation.~~

Going Concern Considerations (Ref: Para. 50-52)

~~A79.~~A34. The assurance practitioner considers the appropriateness of the going concern assumption of the entity when the nature of the assurance engagement and the financial information subject to assurance means that such an assessment could have implications for the assurance report. Ordinarily the assessment of going concern is appropriate for assurance engagements relating to historical financial information, all types of pro forma financial information and prospective financial information.

~~A80.~~A35. When considering whether the entity is a going concern⁸⁸, the assurance practitioner ordinarily takes into account the entity's prepared forecasts, cash flow statements, and financial position and any other events or conditions that are relevant to the assessment. For example, if the prospects for profitability are not supported by adequate cash flows, then both the forecast financial performance statement and the ongoing viability of the entity are at risk. There may also be mitigating factors that in the assurance practitioner's professional judgement, eliminate the going concern uncertainty. These factors may include:

- (a) unequivocal financial support provided from another entity which has the capacity to provide support, or
- (b) the underlying transaction or event giving rise to the document (for example, a capital raising) will, if complete successfully, raise sufficient funds to result in the entity becoming a going concern.

~~A81.~~A36. ~~Such m~~Mitigating factors should be supported by appropriate written evidence. In such circumstances, the assurance

⁸⁷ ~~The concepts and discussion on the use of an Other Matter paragraph relevant to an audit engagement are contained in ASA 706 *Emphasis of Matter Paragraphs and Other Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report*, paragraphs 8-Aus 8.1, may be helpful in determining its form, content and location in the Investigating Accountant's Report Independent Assurance Report applicable to an assurance engagement.~~

⁸⁸ The concepts and discussions on performing a going concern assessment of an entity, relevant to an audit engagement are contained in Auditing ASA 570 *Going Concern*, and may be helpful in performing a going concern assessment in an assurance engagement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

practitioner needs to evaluate and document how the unequivocal financial support or proceeds from the fundraising issue will provide funding for future operations of the entity that will result in the entity becoming a going concern. Consideration should be given to any proposed underwriting of any capital raising, and the circumstances in which the proposed underwriting may not occur. The assurance practitioner should also consider requesting a written representation from the responsible party regarding the appropriateness of the going concern assumption.

~~A82-~~A37. If the assurance practitioner does not consider the going concern assumption to be appropriate to the entity, the implications for the assurance report depend on whether the responsible party has modified the basis of preparation of the financial information from that of a going concern:

- (a) if the assurance practitioner does not consider the basis to be appropriate, then the ~~opinion conclusion~~ in the assurance report should be modified (adverse ~~opinion conclusion~~) on the basis of the going concern assumption being inappropriate to the financial information; or
- (b) if the assurance practitioner considers the basis to be appropriate, then the assurance report may include an emphasis of matter paragraph in the assurance conclusion to draw attention to the disclosure of this fact in the historical financial information.

Consideration of Events up to the Date of the Assurance Report

(Ref: Para. 53-1)

~~A83-~~A38. The extent of consideration by the assurance practitioner of events or transactions occurring after the date of performing assurance procedures and before the date of the assurance report (commonly referred to as subsequent events) depends on:

- (a) the agreed terms of the engagement for reporting of subsequent events;

~~whether the assurance report relates to a fundraising included in a public document, or other document;~~

~~if it is a public document, the responsible party has responsibilities under the Corporations Act 2001; or~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (i) ~~if it is not a public document, the the agreed terms of engagement may include for reporting requirements for of subsequent events;~~
- (b) ~~the potential for such events;~~
- (e)(b) ~~to materially affect the historical financial information in the document in terms terms of requiring comment on, or adjustment to, the historical financial information; and~~
- (d)(c) ~~whether such the events or transactions causes the historical financial information to be potentially misleading or deceptive;~~
- (e)(d) ~~whether such events or transactions are within the ordinary ly business of the entity; and~~
- (f)(e) ~~the requirements of applicable law, regulation, or professional standards.⁸⁹~~

Consideration of Events Identified after the date of the Assurance Report (Ref: Para. 55- 56)

~~A84.A39.~~ If there are material deficiencies, ~~misleading statements,~~ or significant matters omitted from the document, which come to the assurance practitioner's attention after:

- (a) ~~in the case of a public document,~~
- (b) ~~after~~ it has been lodged with the appropriate regulatory body, and
- (c) ~~before the relevant date,~~
- (d)(a) ~~the assurance practitioner considers the implications for the assurance report, as well as any reporting obligations the assurance practitioner may have to inform the entity making the offer issuing the document;~~ or
- (e) ~~in the case of a document that is not a other than a public document,~~ after

⁸⁹ The concepts and discussions on subsequent events relevant to an audit engagement are contained in Auditing Standard ASA 560 *Subsequent Events*, and may be helpful in determining the principles applicable to an assurance engagement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

(f) ~~after it has been~~ ~~has been~~ finalised and issued to its intended user(s), and

(g) before the relevant date,

(h)(b) the assurance practitioner considers the implications for the assurance report, as well as any reporting obligations the assurance practitioner may have to inform the entity ~~making the offer~~ issuing the document.

A85. ~~If there are material deficiencies, misleading statements, or significant matters related to the historical financial information are omitted from the document and come to the assurance practitioner's attention prior to the relevant date, the assurance practitioner discusses the omissions with the responsible party. If the responsible party refuses to correct such omissions, the assurance practitioner:~~ (Ref: Para. 56)

A86. ~~related to the historical financial information on which the assurance practitioner has opined in the assurance report;~~

A87. ~~which have been omitted by the entity from the document;~~

A88. ~~which come to the assurance practitioner's attention prior to the after the relevant date; and~~

A89. ~~the entity has not amended the document, or issued a supplementary document to correct such material deficiencies, misleading statements, or the omission of significant matters;~~ (Ref: Para. 56)

A90.A40. ~~the assurance practitioner needs to~~ ordinarily withdraws consent for the entity to include the assurance report in the document, and evaluates ~~consider~~ ~~if~~ there are any other applicable laws or regulations that impose particular reporting obligations on the assurance practitioner.

Written Representations

A91. ~~The assurance practitioner needs to~~ requests ~~and obtain~~ s a written representation letter from the responsible party at the completion of the assurance engagement.⁹⁰ The assurance practitioner ordinarily

⁹⁰ The concepts and discussions on obtaining written representations relevant to an audit engagement are contained in Auditing Standard ASA 580 *Written Representations*, and may be helpful in determining the form and content of written representations applicable to an assurance engagement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

provides the responsible party with a specific list of matters requiring the responsible party's representations. Such matters may ~~be~~ already be contained in documentation reviewed by the assurance practitioner, including minutes of meetings, written acceptance of the assurance engagement terms, and due diligence committee DDC reports, and therefore the assurance practitioner only needs to request the inclusion of such matters in the written representation letter if the assurance practitioner considers it appropriate in ~~the engagement~~ the assurance engagement circumstances. Appendix 34 provides an illustrative written representation letter. (Ref: Para. 60)

- A92. ~~Examples of matters may include an acknowledgement by the responsible party of:~~
- A93. ~~the agreed terms of the assurance engagement;~~
- A94. ~~their responsibility for:~~
- A95. ~~the preparation of the historical financial information for the time periods stated, in accordance with the applicable criteria that was selected and determined by them;~~
- A96. ~~all other information included in the document, other than reports prepared by experts who have provided their consent for their inclusion;~~
- A97. ~~the overall document;~~
- A98. ~~the establishment and maintenance of proper internal control related to financial reporting;~~
- A99. ~~the maintenance of proper financial records and systems which facilitate the preparation of the financial information;~~
- A100. ~~their responsibility for providing all information requested by the assurance practitioner;~~
- A101. ~~their responsibility for confirming that any uncorrected misstatements are immaterial, either individually or in aggregate to the historical financial information; and that all such misstatements have been previously advised to the assurance practitioner;~~
- A102. ~~their responsibility for providing all material financial information, financial records and related data, and all other information relevant~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~to financial information related to the engagement (for example fraud, errors, regulatory issues or communications);~~

~~A103. their responsibility for confirming the going concern basis of preparation of the historical financial information is appropriate in the document; and~~

~~A104:A41. that there are being no material changes to the historical financial information between the date of the assurance report and the relevant date.~~

~~A105:A42. Oral or written representations made by the responsible party cannot replace other evidence the assurance practitioner could reasonably expect to be available. For example, relevant minutes of meetings of the Board of Directors, or a published statement by the Board of Directors acknowledging responsibility for the preparation and presentation of historical financial information, may be considered appropriate sufficient evidence under the circumstances. To the extent the other evidence obtained is inconsistent with the responsible party's oral or written representations, the assurance practitioner should investigate and evaluate such inconsistencies, with a view to obtaining sufficient appropriate evidence. In such cases, additional procedures may be required in order to achieve this.~~

~~A106:A43. If the responsible party does not provide such a letter, or refuses to provide it, the assurance practitioner ~~needs to consider the implications of this on the assurance report. Having no written representation letter from the responsible party may result in a~~may qualify or issue a ~~ied conclusion or a~~ disclaimer of conclusion in the assurance report, on the basis of a limitation on the scope of the assurance engagement. The assurance practitioner may also include a restriction paragraph on the distribution of, or use of, the assurance report. (Ref: Para. 60)~~

~~A107. An inability to obtain sufficient appropriate evidence regarding a matter that has, or may have, a material effect on the evaluation of the historical financial information in the document, when such evidence would ordinarily be available, constitutes a limitation on the scope of the assurance engagement, even if a written representation from the responsible party has been received by the assurance practitioner on the matter. (Ref: Para. 60)~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~A108.A44. Appendix 4 provides an illustrative written representation letter.~~
(Ref: Para. 60)

Forming the Assurance Conclusion (Ref: Para. 61-63)

~~The assurance practitioner's evaluation of the sufficiency and appropriateness of the evidence obtained during the assurance engagement takes account of:~~

~~the source of the financial information and what assumptions, if any, have been made that affects its preparation;~~

~~the planned assurance level on the historical financial information;~~

~~whether sufficient appropriate evidence has been obtained to support the assurance practitioner's conclusion;~~

~~the assurance practitioner's assessment of whether any uncorrected misstatements or adjustments are material, individually or in aggregate, to the historical financial information; and~~

~~whether the entity has complied with the recognition and measurements principles of the applicable financial reporting framework (which in Australia is ordinarily those contained in applicable Australian Accounting Standards); and~~

~~whether the historical financial information includes adequate disclosure of the applicable criteria selected and applied in its preparation. Applicable law or regulation may preclude the assurance practitioner from expressing an modified conclusion in an assurance report that is included in a public document. Where this is the case, and the assurance practitioner concludes that a modified conclusion is nevertheless appropriate, the assurance practitioner discusses the matter with the responsible party. If the responsible party does not agree to make the changes required to enable the assurance practitioner to issue an unmodified conclusion, the assurance practitioner considers whether they are able to :~~

~~withhold the assurance report;:~~

~~withdraw from the engagementthe assurance engagement; or~~

~~A45. seek legal advice.~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Preparing the Assurance Report

~~A109-A46.~~ The assurance report may be prepared solely in respect of a particular type of financial information (for example, pro forma historical financial information) or be a composite report where two or more of types of financial information are the subject of the assurance report (for example historical and prospective financial information). (Ref: Para. 64)

~~A110-A47.~~ If the assurance practitioner is preparing a composite assurance report the assurance practitioner needs to ensure:

- (a) ~~that~~ the different types of financial information are clearly identified in the document, and separately referred to in the assurance report; and
- (b) the assurance report clearly identifies and segregates the work carried out, and type of assurance expressed, on the ~~each different~~ types of financial information. (Ref: Para. 64)

Basic Elements of the Assurance Report (Ref: Para. 66)

~~A111. The scope/background section of the assurance report may contain the following:~~

- ~~(a) Identification of the historical financial information that is to be the subject of the assurance report.~~
- ~~(b) A discussion of any material adjustments that have been made to the historical financial information in the document.~~
- ~~(c) Sources of the historical financial information where the assurance practitioner was the auditor of the prior year financial report.~~
- ~~(d) A reference to the prior year auditor if the assurance practitioner was not the auditor of the prior year financial report.~~
- ~~(e) If applicable, how a modification to the auditor's conclusion in the prior year audited or reviewed financial report is addressed in the document.~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~(f) In a limited assurance engagement, the summary of assurance procedures ordinarily states that the assurance practitioner's procedures were more limited than for a reasonable assurance engagement and consequently they do not enable the assurance practitioner to obtain the assurance necessary to become aware of all significant matters that might be identified in a reasonable assurance engagement.~~

~~A112. The assurance report cannot be dated earlier than the date on which the assurance practitioner obtained evidence on which the assurance practitioner's conclusion is based, including receipt of a written representation letter from the responsible party.~~

~~A113:A48. In respect of an assurance report that is being included in a public document prepared in accordance with the *Corporations Act 2001*, the assurance practitioner also needs to ensure that the assurance report is:~~

~~(a) included in the public document;~~

~~(b)(a) appropriately cross referenced and consistent with other information disclosed in the public document; and~~

~~(c)(b) appropriately positioned in the public document in relation to the financial information on which the assurance practitioner provides a conclusion.⁹¹~~

~~*Unmodified and Modified Conclusions*~~

~~Unmodified conclusions (Ref: Para. 68)~~

~~A114. When the assurance practitioner concludes, on the basis of having obtained sufficient appropriate evidence, that the historical financial information has been properly prepared by the responsible party based on the applicable criteria, the conclusion expressed in the assurance report is unmodified.~~

~~A115:A49. Appendix 54 contains illustrative examples of of unmodified and modified conclusions⁹² conclusions in independent ~~an~~ assurance reports.~~

⁹¹ See ASIC's RG 170.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~Modified conclusions (Ref: Para. 69)~~

~~When the assurance practitioner expresses a modified conclusion in the assurance report, the reasons for the modification should be properly described, with the effects appropriately quantified, to the extent reasonably practicable and disclosed in the assurance report.~~

~~Appendix 5 contains illustrative examples of modified conclusions⁹³ in an assurance report.~~

~~A qualified conclusion is expressed when: (Ref: Para. 69(a)-1(a))~~

~~the assurance practitioner concludes that misstatements, individually, or in aggregate, are material but not pervasive to the historical financial information;~~

~~matters have come to the assurance practitioner's attention that cause the assurance practitioner to believe that the historical financial information is not prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with the applicable criteria;~~

~~the assurance practitioner is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate evidence on which to base a conclusion, but concludes that the possible effects on the historical financial information of undetected misstatements, if any, could be material but not pervasive to the historical financial information; or~~

~~the assurance practitioner determines there has been a material scope limitation regarding the possible adjustments to the historical financial information that might have been determined to be necessary had the limitation not existed.~~

~~A qualified conclusion is expressed as being "except for" the effects, or possible effects, of the matter to which the qualification relates.~~

~~An adverse conclusion is expressed when the assurance practitioner concludes (having obtained sufficient appropriate evidence) that misstatements, individually or in aggregate, are both material and~~

⁹² The concepts and discussions on modifications to the opinion relevant to an audit engagement are contained in Auditing Standard ASA 705 *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*, and may be helpful in determining the nature, type and opinion wording of modifications applicable to an assurance engagement.

⁹³ The concepts and discussions on modifications to the opinion relevant to an audit engagement are contained in Auditing Standard ASA 705 *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*, and may be helpful in determining the nature, type and opinion wording of modifications applicable to an assurance engagement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~pervasive to the historical financial information. In these circumstances, the assurance practitioner ordinarily concludes that a qualification is not adequate to disclose the misleading, misstated or incomplete nature of the historical financial information. The form of the adverse opinion is ordinarily that the financial information is not prepared fairly, in all material respects, in accordance with the applicable criteria. (Ref: Para 1(a))~~

~~An disclaimer of conclusion is expressed when the assurance practitioner is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate evidence on which to base a conclusion, and concludes that the possible effects on the historical financial information of undetected misstatements, if any, could be both material and pervasive to the financial information. (Ref: Para 69(c))~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

**Use of Going Concern Assumption Appropriate but a Material
Uncertainty Exists** (Ref: Para. 72)

~~A116.A50.~~ The assurance practitioner considers the adequacy of the going concern related disclosures in the document as follows: ~~When the assurance practitioner determines that a material uncertainty exists that casts significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern, the assurance practitioner considers the adequacy of disclosures made in the financial information and/or the document.~~

- (a) ~~If, in the~~ assurance practitioner's professional judgement, the responsible party's disclosure is considered adequate, in terms of both the description of the principal events or conditions that ~~contribute to~~ cast significant doubt on the entity's going concern ability, as well as the fact that a material uncertainty exists related to the events or conditions and therefore the entity may be unable to realise its assets and discharge its liabilities in the normal course of business, then the ~~auditor~~ assurance practitioner expresses an unmodified conclusion, with an ~~E~~emphasis of ~~M~~matter paragraph. The ~~E~~emphasis of ~~M~~matter paragraph ~~is~~ intended to highlight the ~~existence~~ ing of the material uncertainty and to draw attention to the responsible party's disclosures; ~~or:~~
- (b) ~~If~~ in the assurance practitioner's professional judgement disclosure is inadequate, the assurance practitioner expresses ~~a~~ qualified ~~or~~ conclusion or adverse conclusion, as appropriate.

**Consent to the Inclusion of the Assurance Report in a Public
Document** (Ref: Para. 73-74)

~~A117.A51.~~ For assurance reports in connection with a public document prepared in accordance with the *Corporations Act 2001*, the assurance practitioner is required to consent to the form and context in which the assurance report is included in that public document.⁹⁴ Consequently, the assurance practitioner ordinarily reads all other information included in the public document to consider whether it contains any material inconsistencies or material misstatements of fact as compared to the historical financial information, which is the subject of the assurance report.

⁹⁴ See Section 716 of the *Corporations Act 2001*.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~A118.~~ The assurance practitioner needs to consider the following in providing consent for the inclusion of the Investigating Accountant's Report/Independent Assurance Report in the document:

- ~~(a)~~ that the assurance practitioner only takes responsibility for ~~the assurance report included in the that section in the document as that was agreed in the terms of the assurance engagement;~~
- ~~(b)~~ that ~~the assurance report~~ it is appropriately cross referenced and not inconsistent with other information disclosed in the document; and
- ~~(c)~~ that the assurance report is appropriately positioned in the document in relation to the financial information on which the assurance practitioner gives assurance.

~~A119.~~A52. There may be some circumstances where the assurance practitioner does not consider it appropriate to provide the consent. For example:

- (a) where there are material inconsistencies between the historical financial information and other information which remain uncorrected by the responsible party;
- (b) where there are material misstatements of fact relevant to between the historical financial information in and other information which remain uncorrected by the responsible party; or
- (c) where the assurance practitioner does not consider the assurance report will be used for the intended purpose.

Documentation (Ref: Para. 75)

~~A120.~~A53. Sufficient appropriate documentation⁹⁵ should include a record of the assurance practitioner's reasoning on all significant matters that required the exercise of professional judgement, together with the assurance practitioner's conclusions on the matters. In areas involving difficult questions of estimate, principle or judgement, the documentation should include the relevant facts that

⁹⁵ The concepts and discussions on documentation relevant to an audit engagement are contained in Auditing Standard ASA 230 *Audit Documentation*, and may be helpful in determining appropriate documentation to be obtained in an assurance engagement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

were known by the assurance practitioner at the time the conclusion was reached.

~~A121~~.A54. In applying professional judgement to assessing the extent of documentation to be prepared and retained, the assurance practitioner ordinarily considers what would be necessary ~~by to provide for~~ another experienced assurance practitioner who has no previous experience with the assurance engagement ~~to obtain to provide~~ an understanding of the work performed and the basis of the significant decisions taken. It is, however, neither necessary nor practicable to document every matter the assurance practitioner considers during the assurance engagement.

Pro Forma Historical Financial Information

Agreeing on the Terms of the Assurance Engagement (Ref: Para. 80)

A55. There may be circumstances in which undertaking and reporting on pro forma financial information itself is not possible. For example, the fundraising may involve a takeover where the assurance practitioner, or the responsible party of the entity does not have access to the other entity's financial information. Such financial information may or may not have been subject to an audit or review, by another assurance practitioner, depending on the source of the base financial information. In such as case, the assurance practitioner is unable to obtain evidence about how the financial information was prepared (for example, if it was prepared in accordance with Australian Accounting Standards). The responsible party may, in the circumstances, instead request the assurance practitioner to undertake and report on the proper compilation of the aggregated pro forma financial information, rather than the pro forma financial information itself.

~~A122~~.A56. Ordinarily the assurance practitioner only provides limited assurance on pro forma historical financial information, as the adjustments made to the base financial information (which is historical) are based on a stated basis of preparation, which are selected by the responsible party. The assurance practitioner has no responsibility under the terms of the assurance engagement to perform an assessment of the appropriateness or otherwise of the selected stated basis of preparation.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Planning the Assurance Engagement

Planning Activities (Ref: Para. 82)

~~A123-A57.~~ In addition to the application and other explanatory material in paragraph A18, the following planning activities assist the assurance practitioner in the planning process:

- (a) understanding what historical financial information has been selected to use as the base for the preparation of the pro forma historical financial information;
- (b) understanding whether the base financial information has been audited or reviewed, and if so, the extent of work performed, and the type(s) of opinion expressed in the auditor's report;
- (c) discussing with the responsible party what recognition and measurement accounting policies have been used as the stated basis of preparation;
- (d) understanding about any recent key changes in the entity's business activities, and how they affects the pro forma historical financial information;
- (e) identifying the pro forma adjustments (including consolidation adjustments) and pro forma transactions that have been made, and the transactions or events the effects of which they intend to record;
- (f) understanding the methodology used by the responsible party for the adjusting the base financial information by the pro forma adjustments;
- (g) considering whether the use of experts⁹⁶ or other persons with specialised skills is required for the engagement for the assurance engagement. They may be used, for example, in determining:
 - (i) whether the pro forma adjustments were prepared in accordance with the stated basis of preparation;

⁹⁶ The concepts and discussions on placing reliance on the work of another auditor relevant to an audit engagement are contained in ASA 620 *Using the Work of an Auditor's Expert* ~~which~~ Expert, which may be useful to assurance practitioners when determining the extent, if any, of such reliance in the conduct of an assurance engagement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (ii) the suitability of the stated basis of preparation;
- (iii) evaluating particular pro forma adjustments (for example adjustments that are complex or highly subjective in nature); and
- (iv) assessing the impact of certain contractual provisions on the pro forma historical financial information.

~~A124. Other information means information of a financial or non-financial nature included in the document that is not the subject of the assurance report.~~

~~A125. [PL2] Prepared in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework means the financial information included in the document, has been prepared and presented by the responsible party on the basis of the recognition and measurement principles contained in the financial reporting framework.~~

~~A126. [PL2] Private Report means an assurance report prepared by an assurance practitioner that is not included, or to be included, in a public document, but which is prepared in connection with a corporate fundraising, or prospective financial information fundraising, for distribution to intended users external to the entity or within the entity, other than the preparers of the financial information users.~~

~~A127.~~~~A58.~~ [PL2] Pro forma adjustments means are adjustments applied to (unadjusted) base financial information by the responsible party, ordinarily:

- (a) to illustrate the impact of a significant event(s) or transaction(s), as if the event had occurred, or the transaction had been undertaken, at an earlier date selected for the purposes of the illustration;
- (b) if the an entity is being acquired, adjustments to make its basis of preparation of the financial information consistent with the applicable financial reporting framework (including accounting policies) of the acquiring entity;
- (c) to eliminate the effects of unusual or non-recurring transactions that are not part of the normal operations of the entity;

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~(d) to reflect a transaction (other than the underlying transaction that is the subject of the document,) that occurred part way through the period covered by the financial information (for example, an business acquisition part way through the time period);~~

~~(d) [PL3]other adjustments to to allow for a “like-for-like” comparison across particular time periods; and/or~~

~~(e) to Adjustments made to historical financial information may relate to the correction of errors and uncertainties;~~

~~(e)(f) , and to ensure consistency with current accounting policies, or applicable Australian Accounting Standards; and/or~~

~~(f)~~

~~(g) [PPL]~~

~~(g) [PPL] to reflect post financial reporting period end transactions.~~

Pro forma adjustments need to have a reasonable basis of preparation and be supported by appropriate evidence.

~~A128.~~

Performing ~~the Engagement~~the assurance engagement (Ref: Para. 84)

Assurance Procedures

~~A129-A59.~~ In addition to the application and other explanatory material in paragraph A25 of this ASAE, when designing and performing assurance procedures, the assurance practitioner’s procedures on pro forma historical financial information ordinarily include:

- (a) determining, through enquiry and analytical procedures, whether the base historical financial information selected by the responsible party:
 - (i) has been previously audited or reviewed, and the results of that audit or review;

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~(ii)~~ about the process by which the base historical financial information has been prepared from underlying, reliable, accounting records,

~~(ii)(iii)~~ and the reliability has been of the underlying accounting records to which such financial information is agreed or reconciled to the underlying accounting records;

~~(iii)(iv)~~ reflects any changes made to the recognition and measurement accounting policies from the prior time period, and if so, the nature of the change and its effect;

~~(iv)(v)~~ reflects the results of any identified ~~uncorrected immaterial~~ misstatements from the prior year's financial report;

and therefore provides a reasonable basis for the preparation of pro forma historical financial information;

(b) reading the comparable prior time period financial report and, as appropriate, the most recent annual or interim financial report;

(c) where applicable, reading the most recent audit or review working papers relating to the entity's financial report to identify any matters that may affect the base historical financial information;

(d) understanding the pro forma adjustments ~~and transactions~~ made to the base historical financial information, and the transactions to which they relate, including:

~~(i)~~ what their purpose is, including whether it is to reclassify;

~~(ii)~~ to reclassify historical amounts, for example, for opening adjustments or for consistency between years, or;

~~(iii)(i)~~ to account for transaction specific effects, for example for significant changes to the entity including financing and asset structural changes;

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- ~~(iv)~~(ii) whether they can be supported with evidence by the responsible party, and are relevant to the ~~corporate fundraising, or other transactions or events for which adjustments have been made;~~
- ~~(v)~~(iii) whether they are historical in nature, and hence reflect transaction results achieved in the actual time period in which they occurred:
- ◇ if the adjustments reflect anticipated transactions or events that have not yet happened, or will not happen, they are known as “as if” adjustments; -or
 - ◇ if adjustments are made to reflect the indirect results of events or transactions as if they had been achieved in a prior time period or earlier in the current period, rather than when they were actually achieved, they are still “as if” adjustments;
 - ◇ ~~if the adjustments and are not historical in nature, and hence are not appropriate to make to the financial information that is prepared as being pro forma historical financial information. Examples include adjustments made to reflect changes to financial costs as a result of new or revised fundraising structures, or assuming a business was acquired at an earlier date.~~
- ~~(vi)~~ ensuring all pro forma adjustments considered material by the responsible party and the assurance practitioner, ~~to reflect the effects of the transactions or events for which adjustment is being made, are reflected in the resultant pro forma financial information; -are:~~
- ~~(vii)~~ ~~reflected in the resultant pro forma financial information. Pro forma adjustments are ordinarily considered material if their omission causes the pro forma historical financial information to be misleading/misstated; and~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~(viii)(iv)~~ adequately disclosed, quantified and the reason(s) for the adjustment explained in the document;

~~(ix)(v)~~ reviewing and assessing the suitability of pro forma ~~transactions and~~ adjustments made, as compared to the stated basis of preparation (being the appropriate recognition and measurement accounting policies adopted by the entity, and as disclosed in the document);

~~(x)(vi)~~ confirming the mathematical accuracy of the calculations performed in deriving and applying the pro forma adjustments to the historical financial information in order to produce the pro forma historical financial information; and

~~(e)~~ performing analytical procedures on the resultant pro forma historical financial information; and

~~(f)~~ the adequacy of financial information disclosures included in the document, including whether its presented in columnar or tabular format, consisting of base financial information, pro forma adjustments and resulting pro forma historical financial information.

Aggregated Pro Forma Financial Information

Assurance Engagement Acceptance

Preconditions for Acceptance (Ref: Para. 98)

~~A130. Financial information that is aggregated is ordinarily in the form of pro forma financial information, which is sourced from different entities to a corporate fundraising. Aggregated financial information is designed to show the net result of amalgamating those entities financial information.~~

Agreeing on the Terms of the Assurance Engagement (Ref: Para. 99)

~~A131. Ordinarily the assurance practitioner is not required in an engagement to opine on aggregated pro forma financial information to:~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (a) ~~evaluate the appropriateness of the applicable criteria or the stated basis of preparation, as applicable, as part of the engagement terms; or~~
- (b) ~~express assurance on whether the aggregated financial information is prepared in all material respects in accordance with the recognition and measurement accounting policies adopted by the entity, as prescribed by the applicable financial information framework.~~

Performing the Engagement ~~the assurance engagement~~ (Ref: Para. 100)

Assurance Procedures

~~A132. In addition to the applicable and other explanatory material in paragraph A22, when designing and performing assurance procedures, the assurance practitioner's procedures on aggregated financial information ordinarily include:~~

- (a) ~~determining through enquiry and analytical procedures the process taken by the responsible party to extract and aggregate different sources of pro forma financial information;~~
- (b) ~~consider the evidence supporting the adjustments including how adjustments are identified and made to the source pro forma financial information;~~
- (c) ~~evaluate the differences, if any, in the responsible party's application of the recognition and measurement accounting policies previously adopted by the entity to the aggregated pro forma financial information;~~
- (d) ~~whether the aggregated pro forma financial information is materially in accordance with the applicable criteria; and~~
- (e) ~~the adequacy of pro forma financial information disclosures included in the document.~~

Preparing the Assurance Report

Basic Elements of the Assurance Report

~~A133-A60. The stated basis of preparation the pro forma transactions and associated adjustments described in the document, should~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

include the extent to which the entity has and in accordance with the accounting policies adopted by the entity and also described in the document; been consistent with the recognition and measurement principles in the Australian Accounting Standards, except for pro forma adjustments to reflect the fundraisings transaction in the pro forma historical financial information. (Ref: Para. 97(c)(i))

Prospective Financial Information

Assurance Engagement Acceptance

Preconditions for Acceptance (Ref: Para. 103-104)

~~A134.~~A61. The responsible party is ultimately responsible for the preparation and presentation of all information (including all assumptions and applied criteria used as the basis in the preparation of ~~for~~ the prospective financial information) in the document. The responsible party may engage other experts (for example, tax advisors, business advisors, or legal counsel) who may prepare, assist with the preparation, or provide independent advice on, the information included in the document; however it is the responsible party who retains responsibility for such information. The only exception to this being that the responsible party is not responsible for the content of reports prepared by other parties/~~experts~~ which experts, which are included, by consent, in the document.

A62. Assurance engagements on prospective financial information ordinarily ~~result in an express~~ result in an express a limited assurance conclusion ~~being expressed on the prospective financial information and its underlying assumptions~~. This is due to the nature of the prospective financial information being related to events and actions that have not yet occurred, and may not occur. Evidence available to support the underlying assumptions may be available, however such evidence is itself generally future orientated and, therefore, speculative in nature. The assurance practitioner is therefore not in a position to express an opinion as to whether the results shown in the prospective financial information will be achieved. Further given the nature of the evidence available in assessing the reasonableness of the assumptions on which the prospective financial information is based, it is ordinarily difficult for ~~of~~ the assurance practitioner to obtain a level of satisfaction sufficient to express a reasonable assurance conclusion that the assumptions are free of material misstatement. Consequently, the assurance practitioner ordinarily

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

provides a limited assurance conclusion on the reasonableness of best-estimate assumptions.

~~A135. If the base financial information that is the source of the pro forma prospective financial information ~~forecast~~ has not been previously subject to an audit or review that has resulted in an unmodified opinion being issued, the assurance practitioner is ordinarily unable to provide a limited assurance conclusion on the pro forma forecast prospective financial information. In such circumstances, the assurance practitioner discusses the matter with the responsible party, and may consequently agree to undertake and report on the proper compilation of the pro forma forecast prospective financial information rather than the pro forma forecast prospective financial information itself.~~

~~A136.~~

Other Factors Affecting Engagement Acceptance (Ref: Para. 91-93)

~~A63. In obtaining an preliminary understanding of whether the assumptions have a reasonable basis, the assurance practitioner considers matters such as: (Ref: Para. 105(a)(ii))~~

- ~~(a) the nature of the assumptions (best-estimate or hypothetical), and whether their impact are material to the prospective financial material;~~
- ~~(b) the economic viability, stability and financial strength of the entity;~~
- ~~(c) the economic viability and economic substance of the fundraising and the assumptions related to it;~~
- ~~(d) the availability and quality of the data supporting the best-estimate assumptions (for example the data is sourced from statistical, mathematical or computer-assisted techniques); and~~
- ~~(e) if applicable , the assurance practitioner's past experience with the accuracy of the entity's previous prospective financial information, as against actual results.~~

~~A137. The assurance practitioner should not accept an assurance engagement unless the assurance practitioner is satisfied based on preliminary knowledge that the assurance engagement has a rational~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

purpose. ~~Examples where this may not be the case include:~~ (Ref: Para. 105(d))

~~A64. that there is the engagement has a rational purpose. Examples where this may not be the case include:~~

~~(a) — Examples where this may be the case include:~~

~~(b)(a) the prospective financial information does not have reasonable grounds for inclusion in a public document (for example it is a projection);⁹⁷~~

~~(e)(b) the prospective financial information is not not materially affected by hypothetical assumptions;~~

~~(d)(c) if there will be is a no significant limitations on the scope of the assurance practitioner's work; or~~

~~the engagement circumstances lead if engagement circumstances lead the assurance practitioner has no reason to believe that the responsible party intends to associate the assurance practitioner's name with the prospective financial information in an inappropriate manner;~~

~~the nature and viability of the entity's operations, reputation, economic and legal/regulatory environment, and industry in which it operates are satisfactory;~~

~~(e) — the most recent financial reporting results are satisfactory;
and~~

~~(f) — the past record, if applicable, of the responsible party in preparing prospective financial information, including the underlying assumptions, is satisfactory.~~

~~A138. In obtaining an preliminary understanding of the assumptions, and whether they are expected to have a reasonable basis, the assurance practitioner ordinarily considers matters such as:~~

~~(a) — the nature of the assumptions (best estimate or hypothetical), and whether their impact on the prospective financial information is material or not;~~

⁹⁷ For prospective financial information included in a public document, see the *Corporations Act 2001* and *Corporations Regulations* for requirements. See RG 170 for guidance on what constitutes reasonable grounds for inclusion.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (b) ~~the economic viability of the entity, the stability of its business and its financial strength;~~
- (c) ~~the economic viability and economic substance of the corporate fundraising and the transaction that underlies the assumptions related to it;~~
- (d) ~~the quality (for example the data is sourced from statistical, mathematical or computer assisted techniques) of the data and availability of data supporting the assumptions, including those derived from third parties; and~~
- (e)(d) ~~the assurance practitioner's past experience, if applicable, with the accuracy of the entity's preparations of prospective financial information as against actual results.~~

~~A139:A65.~~ If the responsible party is not also the engaging party, the assurance practitioner ordinarily considers the effect this may have on their ability to access ~~to~~ records, documentation and other information that may be needed by the assurance practitioner to complete ~~the engagement~~the assurance engagement.

~~A140:A66.~~ In circumstances where the assurance practitioner is a member of a firm which is also providing to the entity ~~other~~ non-assurance services in respect of the document, the assurance practitioner should consider relevant ethical requirements (including independence), and the requirements of applicable law, regulation or professional standards when considering whether to accept the assurance engagement. Examples of non-assurance services commonly provided include the preparation of taxation information and other consulting services. The provision of such non-assurance services by the assurance practitioner is not within the scope of this ASAE.⁹⁸ (Ref: Para. A76)

Agreeing on the Terms of the Assurance Engagement

~~A141.~~ Acknowledgement by the responsible party in writing via acceptance of the assurance engagement letter provides evidence that the appropriate relationship exists, that the responsible party~~#~~ accepts its responsibilities, and establishes a basis for a common understanding of the responsibility of each party. It also avoids misunderstandings of the agreed terms. The responsible party who

⁹⁸ Refer APES 350 *Participation by members in public practice in due diligence committees in connection with a public document* (January 2011), issued by the Accounting and Ethical Standards Board

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

is requested to sign the assurance engagement letter should be the ultimate responsible party of the entity, or an authorised representative/officer thereof, recognising that in certain circumstances, the directors of the entity (being those charged with governance) may not be appointed by the stage of agreeing the terms of the assurance engagement or the entity may not be in existence when the assurance engagement commences (for example, a new company structure). In such cases, the assurance practitioner considers whether to update and re-issue the assurance engagement letter terms for a change of responsible party. (Ref: Para. 108)

A67.

~~A142:~~A68. In the absence of a written acknowledgement of responsibility by the responsible party, via acceptance of the assurance engagement letter, the assurance practitioner should consider whether it is appropriate to accept the assurance engagement. Accepting the assurance engagement may be appropriate when, for example, other sources, such as applicable law, regulation, or a contract, acknowledge, or indicate, such responsibility. For example, under the *Corporations Act 2001*,⁹⁹ the directors of an entity are deemed responsible for the prospective financial information included in a public document used in offering securities. (Ref: Para. 108)

~~A143:~~A69. ~~The terms of the assurance engagement letter ordinarily include~~The assurance practitioner exercises professional judgement as to what assurance procedures are summarised in the assurance engagement letter, taking into account the nature of the financial information, and the assurance engagement circumstances. Examples of procedures that could be detailed are: (Ref: Para. 109)

- ~~(a) — an introductory section that covers the assurance practitioner's understanding of the terms of the engagement including;~~
- ~~(b) — the type of financial information, the time period covered, the source of the financial information, and the type of document (if any) the financial information will appear in and for who and what purpose it has been prepared;~~
- ~~(c) — if applicable, the nature of the underlying transaction/event giving rise to the assurance engagement;~~

⁹⁹ See Section 717 of the *Corporations Act 2001* for an overview of the procedures for offering securities.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- ~~(d)~~ a statement that the assurance practitioner is independent of the responsible party, and of the prospective financial information;
- ~~(e)~~ an outline of the scope of the engagement;
- ~~(f)~~ that assurance procedures will be performed on the prospective financial information in order for the assurance practitioner to be able to issue a limited assurance conclusion; and
- ~~(g)~~ confirmation that the engagement~~the assurance engagement~~ will be conducted in accordance with this ASAE and if applicable, particular law or regulation (for example the *Corporations Act 2001*) and ethical and other pronouncements of professional bodies to which the assurance practitioner adheres;
- ~~(h)~~ details of the assurance procedures that will be performed. The assurance practitioner exercises professional judgement in what specific assurance procedures are summarised in the engagement~~the assurance engagement~~ letter, taking into account the nature of the financial information, and the engagement~~the assurance engagement~~ circumstances. Examples of procedures that could be included are:
 - ~~(i)~~(a) analytical review procedures;
 - ~~(j)~~(b) review and consideration of key work papers, accounting records and other documents prepared by the responsible party and other experts;
 - ~~(k)~~(c) enquiry of, and discussion with, the responsible party, those charged with governance, management, experts, and other parties related to the prospective financial information;
 - ~~(l)~~(d) examination, on a test basis, of evidence supporting the prospective financial information, and the best-estimate assumptions used; and
 - (e) comparisons of consistency in the application of recognition and measurement principles contained in the applicable financial reporting framework as compared to the accounting policies adopted by the entity in the

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

preparation of the prospective financial information, and disclosed in the document.

- ~~(m) —;~~
- ~~(n) — a statement that the assurance practitioner is not performing an audit, and accordingly no audit opinion will be expressed on the prospective financial information;~~
- ~~(o) — a statement that whether the assurance practitioner will have require sufficient access to all required financial information in order to form the assurance conclusion;~~
- ~~(p) — details of the type of wording to be included in the limited assurance conclusion;~~
- ~~(q) — confirmation that the assurance practitioner will issue an assurance report relating to the prospective financial information for inclusion in the document, where applicable;~~
- ~~(r) — confirmation that the assurance practitioner will rely on the fact that the responsible party is responsible for:~~

A70. The assurance practitioner may include such terms and conditions as in their professional judgement are appropriate to the assurance engagement. They may include:

- ~~(s) — the preparation and presentation of the prospective financial information,~~
- ~~(t) — for the preparation of the document within which the prospective financial information is included (if applicable); and~~
- ~~(u) — issuing the document (if applicable);~~
- ~~(v) — the expectation that the responsible party will provide written representations.~~
- ~~(w) — agreement from the responsible party:~~
- ~~(x) — to make available to the assurance practitioner financial information and any accompanying other information in time to allow the assurance practitioner to complete the~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~engagement~~the assurance engagement in accordance with
the proposed timetable; and

- ~~(y)~~ to inform the assurance practitioner of factors that may affect the assurance report, of which the responsible party may become aware during the time period from the date of the assurance report to the date it is issued.
- ~~(z)~~(a) documented important deadlines/timelines for the completion of the assurance engagement. This may include deadlines such as the expected date of publication of the document and when the assurance practitioner's consent is required;
- ~~(aa)~~(b) arrangements regarding the planning and performance of the assurance engagement; including the composition of the assurance engagement team (including any experts);
- ~~(bb)~~(c) arrangements for the assurance practitioner to:
- (i) attend meetings such as the due diligence committee meetings (if appropriate under the terms of the assurance engagement);¹⁰⁰
 - (ii) receive draft and final versions of the document in a timely manner when requested; and
 - (iii) use the service(s) of the responsible party's experts and/or the assurance practitioner's experts; and
 - (iv) communicate directly with the entity's external auditor and/or other professional advisers regarding matters relevant to the prospective financial information.;

~~A144.~~ The form and context of any published consent that the assurance practitioner has agreed to include in the document; ~~For example,~~ in respect of public documents prepared in accordance with the *Corporations Act 2001*¹⁰¹ and lodged with the Australian Securities and Investments Commission (ASIC) entities intending to distribute the document in both electronic and paper form, [the responsible](#)

¹⁰⁰ See APES 350 *Participation by Members in Public Practice in Due Diligence Committees in Connection with a Public Document* (December 2009), issued by the Accounting Professional and Ethical Standards Board.

¹⁰¹ See Section 716 of the *Corporations Act 2001*.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

party must also obtain the assurance practitioner's consent to the¹⁰²
inclusion of their report in ~~in~~ both forms of the documents ~~as well~~;
(Ref: Para. 109(c)(iv)) ~~and~~

~~A145.~~A71. ~~_____ a request for the responsible party to acknowledge receipt~~
~~of the engagement letter and to agree to the terms of the engagement~~
~~contained in the letter.~~

~~A146.~~ ~~The responsible party who signs the engagement~~the assurance
engagement ~~letter should be the ultimate responsible party of the~~
~~entity, or an authorised representative/officer thereof, recognising~~
~~that in certain circumstances, the directors of the entity (being those~~
~~charged with governance) may not be appointed by the stage of~~
~~agreeing the terms of the engagement or the entity may not be in~~
~~existence when the engagement~~the assurance engagement
commences (for example, a new company structure). In such cases,
the assurance practitioner considers whether to update and re-issue
the engagementthe assurance engagement ~~letter terms for a change~~
~~of responsible party. (Ref: Para. 95)~~

~~A147.~~A72. ~~_____ Appendix 2 provides an illustrative example engagement~~
~~letter for~~ an fundraising ~~assurance engagement~~ ~~relate to a corporate~~
~~fundraising.~~
(Ref: Para. 109)

Changes in the Terms of the Assurance Engagement (Ref: Para. 110-112)

~~A148.~~ ~~Any change in agreed terms proposed by the responsible party~~
~~throughout the assurance engagement should be appropriately~~
~~justified to the assurance practitioner's satisfaction before the~~
~~assurance practitioner agrees to the changes.~~ ~~Examples of when~~
~~requests from the responsible party may be received include a~~
~~change to reflect a change in circumstances affect~~ing~~ed~~ ~~the need for~~
~~the service, a misunderstanding of the nature of the assurance~~
~~services to be provided. The assurance practitioner considers the~~
~~implications~~ justification for ~~of~~ ~~the proposed change on the conduct~~
~~and reporting of the~~ assurance ~~engagement, as well as any evidence~~
~~that was obtained prior to the change,~~ prior to the assurance
practitioner agreeing to the change.

~~A149.~~ ~~A change in circumstances that affects the entity's requirements or a~~
~~misunderstanding concerning the nature of the service originally~~
~~requested may be considered a reasonable basis for requesting a~~
~~change in the engagement~~the assurance engagement.

¹⁰² See ASIC Regulatory Guide 107 *Electronic Prospectuses*.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~A150.A73.~~ ~~Certain proposed changes to the agreed terms by the responsible party that may be unacceptable to the assurance practitioner, and ordinarily would not be justified or agreed to include:~~

- ~~(a)~~ ~~a change that affects the intended users' needs, or a misunderstanding concerning the nature of the assurance engagement;~~
- ~~(b)~~(a) a change that relates to prospective financial information that is incorrect, incomplete or otherwise unsatisfactory;
- ~~(e)~~(b) limiting time available to perform ~~the engagement~~the assurance engagement; preventing access to all relevant documents or persons requested; and/or
- ~~(d)~~(c) not providing documents when requested, leading to time constraints that make the satisfactory completion of the assurance engagement by the date required unachievable.

~~A151.A74.~~ It is important that all changes agreed to by the responsible party and the assurance practitioner be documented and approved in writing to ensure no misunderstanding between the parties of what has been agreed.
(Ref: Para. 111)

Planning the Assurance Engagement

Planning Activities

~~A152.A75.~~ Planning the assurance engagement ordinarily involves obtaining an understanding of the nature of the prospective financial information, its preparation, and other assurance engagement circumstances to identify and understand events and transactions that may have a significant impact on the prospective financial information, or on the assurance report. The assurance practitioner is required to use professional judgement to determine the extent of the understanding that is needed of the nature of the prospective financial information and other assurance engagement circumstances.⁴⁰³ The assurance practitioner ordinarily considers

⁴⁰³ ~~The concepts and discussions on complete set of financial statements relevant to an audit engagement are contained in ASA 200 Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance with Australian Auditing Standards, paragraph Aus 13.1, and may be helpful in determining the components of a complete set of financial statements applicable to an assurance engagement.~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

whether that understanding is sufficient to assess the risks that the prospective financial information may be materially misstated, and in order to be able to evaluate all significant assumptions used in its preparation.

(Ref: Para. 114)

A76. The agreed terms of the individual engagement determine the nature, timing and extent of procedures to be performed by the assurance practitioner. The type of planning activities the assurance practitioner performs depends on the level of understanding of the entity the assurance practitioner may already have. Such an understanding may have been obtained from prior audit or review engagements performed. If this is the case, the assurance practitioner would ordinarily have acquired an understanding of the entity and its operations. This understanding would ordinarily include knowledge of the entity's management skills and resources, information technology systems (including financial systems). This understanding would need to be updated to ensure it has not changed in the current time period. It could then be used, for example, to provide a measure for assessing the reasonableness of the best-estimate assumptions used in the preparation of the prospective financial information. Note that in certain engagement circumstances, the assurance practitioner may not be able to obtain such a detailed understanding. For example, in takeover or merger fundraising transaction, the assurance practitioner may not be able to access one of the entity's financial information, other than that available in the public domain. Hence, the level of understanding will be necessarily more limited, as will the nature of the assurance conclusion.

A153-A77. If the assurance practitioner does not have an prior understanding of the entity, the following planning activities assist the assurance practitioner in determining the nature, timing and extent of procedures to be performed in this process: (Ref: Para. 115)

(a) the extent of the assurance practitioner's understanding of the entity (which may have been gained from experience in conducting the prior audit(s) or review(s) of its financial report(s));

(b)(a) understanding whether the entity is in a start-up phase, or has been in operation for a number of years. If the entity is in start-up phase, the assurance practitioner ordinarily expands their planning activities so as to be able to obtain sufficient knowledge and understanding of the entity;

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

order to meet the requirements of the assurance engagement and this ASAE; and

~~— understanding the needs of users of the prospective financial information;~~

~~(e)(b) understanding the nature and type of entity including its size, and complexity, of the entity including its ownership and regulatory structure, strategies, industry, key products/services, competitors, regulatory environment, management structure, and financial resources;~~

~~A154. Uthe extent of its operations, and geographical locations in which it trades;~~

~~A155. the industry and economic environment within which it operates;~~

~~A156. applicable laws and regulations primarily affecting its operations;~~

~~A157. its key strategies for establishing and maintaining profitable operations;~~

~~A158:A78. understanding the prospective financial information involves the types of audit or review report conclusions previously issued by the entities' auditors;~~

~~(a) whether the assurance practitioner has previously performed an audit or review of the entity's previous time period financial reports;~~

~~(b) if this is the case, the assurance practitioner would ordinarily have acquired an understanding of the entity and its operations. This understanding would include knowledge of the entity's management skills and resources, information technology systems (including financial systems). This understanding would need to be updated to ensure it has not changed in the current time period; or~~

~~(c) if this is not the case, the assurance practitioner ordinarily expands their planning activities so as to be able to obtain sufficient knowledge and understanding in order to meet the requirements of this ASAEperforms limited assurance procedures in order to gain assurance on the source of the prospective financial information;~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- ~~(d) obtaining an understanding of the prospective financial information, appropriate to the engagement:~~
- ~~— considering any previous knowledge of the entity's historical financial information, which may be used to provide a measure for assessing the reasonableness of the assumptions used in the preparation of the prospective financial information;~~
- (e) understanding the source of the prospective financial information (a forecast, or a combination of a forecast and a projection) or otherwise, and whether any of the base financial information has been subject to a prior audit or review;
- (f) understanding the basis of the assumptions used in the prospective financial information through enquiry;
- (g) understanding the applicable criteria used and time period covered;
- (a) understanding whether the prospective financial information is a forecast, a projection, or a combination of a forecast and projection;
- ~~(h)(b) understanding the applied criteria developed, selected and used by the responsible party to meet their requirements in the preparation of the prospective financial information. As detailed in ASAE 3000,¹⁰⁴ the applied criteria ordinarily has particular characteristics that the assurance practitioner is able to use in their evaluation of whether the applicable criteria has been applied by the responsible party. These characteristics include relevance, completeness, reliability, neutrality, and understandability; (Ref: Para. 115(g))~~
- (c) understanding the basis of preparation of the prospective financial information (including the extent to which statistical, mathematical and computer-assisted techniques are used) and comparisons between this and the most recent historical financial information;
- (d) determining the accuracy of any forecast(s) prepared in prior time periods, and the reasons for material variances;

¹⁰⁴ See ASAE 3000, paragraphs 35-39 (inclusive).

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~_____ understanding the requirements of applicable law or regulation.¹⁰⁵~~

~~Note that in certain engagement circumstances however, the assurance practitioner does not need to obtain a detailed understanding of the prospective financial information. For example, where the engagement relates to a takeover or merger transaction, where the assurance practitioner has no access to the one of the parties' financial information, or other entity to be merged, as appropriate, other than that available in the public domain;~~

~~_____ understanding any applicable internal control over the information systems used to capture and record the prospective financial information, and the expertise of the persons responsible for these systems;~~

~~(i) _____ obtaining an understanding of whether comparative information is to be included in the document, and whether it will be restated;~~

~~(e) _____ obtaining an understanding of the other information included in the document to assess whether it is consistent with the prospective financial information;~~

~~(j)(f) _____ identifying other relevant financial information available in the public domain; and~~

~~(k) _____ developing expectations for use when performing analytical procedures.⁵~~

~~(g) _____~~

~~(l) _____ the nature and extent of experts or other specialised skills involvement required for the engagement.¹⁰⁶ ~~An expert~~~~

¹⁰⁵ _____ Prospective financial information included in a public document under the *Corporations Act 2001* is required to be based on reasonable grounds¹⁰⁵ to be considered not misleading, so the assurance practitioner would need to perform plan and procedures that allow for an evaluation of whether the financial information is based on reasonable grounds. See section 728(2) and section 769C of the *Corporations Act 2001*. See ASIC's RG 170 *Prospective Financial Information*, paragraphs 170.17 and 170.20. See ASIC's RG 170 *Prospective Financial Information*, for further guidance on what constitutes "reasonable grounds", as well as some non-exhaustive examples of indicative factors that may suggest or demonstrate reasonable grounds.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

may be internal (a partner or staff in the assurance practitioner's firm or network firm) or external to the firm. There may be circumstances when the assurance practitioner may require the services of an expert, particularly when obtaining sufficient appropriate evidence to support the assurance practitioner's conclusion. For example, when determining the suitability of applicable criteria used by the responsible party in preparing the prospective financial information;

- (m) the nature, timing, and extent of communications that will be required with the responsible party, and third party experts, and other advisors;

~~A159-A79.~~ ~~m~~Materiality considerations and assessment. However, is ordinarily materiality is considered in terms of both quantitative and qualitative factors, such as relative magnitude, the nature, and extent of the effect of these factors on the assurance practitioner's evaluation of the financial information, and the intended users interests.¹⁰⁷ In determining materiality, the assurance practitioner ~~needs to use~~ professional judgement to understand and assess these factors, and how they might influence the decisions of intended users of the prospective financial information in evaluating the entity's prospects of the entity; ~~and Refer Appendix 3 for examples of the quantitative and qualitative factors of materiality;~~

~~assurance engagement risk. This r~~Assurance engagement risk comprises inherent risk, control risk and detection risk¹⁰⁸ and the assurance practitioner considers these risk components in terms of the assurance engagement circumstances; in particular the nature of the prospective financial information and whether a reasonable or limited assurance conclusion is sought. ~~T~~These considerations are then reflected in the extent of the planned procedures to be performed and the evidence-gathering process. ~~assessing the~~

¹⁰⁶ The concepts and discussions on using the work of experts relevant to an audit engagement are contained in ASA 620 *Using the Work of an Auditor's Expert*, and may be useful to assurance practitioners when determining their responsibilities when using the work of experts in assurance engagements.

¹⁰⁷ The concepts and discussions on establishing materiality relevant to an audit engagement are contained in ASA 320 *Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit*, which may be useful to assurance practitioners when determining materiality in the conduct of an assurance engagement.

¹⁰⁸ The concepts and discussions on assurance engagement risk relevant to an audit engagement are contained in ASA 315 *Identifying and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement through Understanding the Entity and Its Environment*, which may be useful to assurance practitioners when determining assurance engagement risk in the conduct of an assurance engagement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~suitability of the recognition and measurement accounting policies used as the stated basis of preparation, as well as determining, for instance:~~

~~the appropriateness of any transactions or adjustments made to the base financial information;~~

~~the appropriateness of the pro forma adjustments to record the transactions or events for which the base financial information is being adjusted;~~

~~identifying the source of the base financial information used to prepare the pro forma forecast;~~

~~if it has been sourced from a mixture of historical and forecast financial information, consider:~~

~~the reasoning for combining historical and forecast financial information;~~

~~whether the historical financial information has been previously audited or reviewed; the type(s) of opinion expressed in the auditor's report; and the extent to which it has been used; and~~

~~if it has been sourced from a forecast, consider~~

~~the source of the forecast;~~

~~A160. and~~

~~(a) fraud risk considerations (where applicable).~~

~~A161.A80. As detailed in ASAE 3000,¹⁰⁹ the suitability of the applied criteria used by the responsible party ordinarily has particular characteristics that the assurance practitioner is able to use in their evaluation of whether the applicable criteria has been applied by the responsible party. These characteristics include relevance, completeness, reliability, neutrality, and understand ability. When dealing with prospective financial information prepared for use in a corporate fundraising transaction, or for other purposes, the responsible party ordinarily develops specific criteria to meet their requirements.~~

~~(Ref: Para. 101(g))~~

¹⁰⁹ See ASAE 3000, paragraphs 35-39 (inclusive).

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Reliance on the work of another Assurance Practitioner (Ref: Para. 116-117)

~~A162~~.A81. The assurance practitioner should therefore consider whether to request reliance on the work the extent (if any) to which reliance can be placed on the work of another the other assurance practitioner, in respect of previously issued audit or review reports on historical financial information, and then to what extent such reliance should be taken. The assurance practitioner considers taking into account:

- (a) Whether the assurance practitioner can obtain access to the audit working papers.
- (b) Whether the other assurance practitioner permits reliance to be placed on the work.
- (c) The purpose for which the other work was performed.
- (d) Audit materiality levels set.
- (e) Audit approach taken.
- (f) Audit differences (if any) identified.
- (g) Type of opinion expressed in the auditor's report, and if applicable, reasons for a modified opinion.

~~A163~~.A82. Even if the assurance practitioner requests the other assurance practitioner to permit reliance on their previously issued assurance report by the assurance practitioner for the purpose of the current assurance engagement, it is often the case that the Ordinarily, another other assurance practitioner will not permit such reliance. This is due to their -to be placed on their assurance report (regardless of whether it is an audit report or review report), as the assurance report being was prepared and issued for another-a purpose other than the that subject of to the current assurance engagement. In the absence of the assurance practitioner being able to place reliance. In these cases, the assurance practitioner needs to carefully consider what additional assurance procedures are required may-to be required-to-planned and performed on the source financial information used in the preparation of the prospective financial information, in order to obtain sufficient and appropriate evidence necessary for the assurance engagement-on the base financial

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~information.~~¹¹⁰ ~~The assurance practitioner should therefore consider the extent (if any) to which reliance can be placed on the work of the other assurance practitioner, taking into account:~~

~~A164:A83. Whether the assurance practitioner can obtain access to the audit working papers.~~

~~A165:A84. Whether the other assurance practitioner permits reliance to be placed on the work.~~

~~A166:A85. The purpose for which the other work was performed.~~

~~A167:A86. Audit materiality levels set.~~

~~A168:A87. Audit approach taken.~~

~~A169:A88. Audit differences (if any) identified.~~

~~A170:A89. Type of opinion expressed in the auditor's report, and if applicable, reasons for a modified opinion.~~

Performing the Engagementthe assurance engagement

Assurance Procedures

~~A171:A90. The assurance procedures ordinarily involve performing analytical review of the prospective financial information, enquiries of the responsible party and other relevant parties, and obtaining evidence. Where the assurance practitioner identifies matters requiring further investigation, further assurance procedures are designed and performed, to reduce assurance engagement risk to an appropriate level. (Ref: Para. 1-104)~~

~~Source Data of the Prospective Financial Information (Ref: Para. 118(c))~~

~~A172:A91. The extent of procedures and evidence required depends on the agreed terms of the assurance engagement, and type of assurance to be obtained. When designing and performing assurance procedures, the assurance practitioner considers the adequacy, relevance and reliability of the information obtained to be used as~~

¹¹⁰ The concepts and discussions on placing reliance on the work of another auditor relevant to an audit engagement are contained in ASA 620 *Using the work of an Auditor's Expert and ASA 600 Special Considerations - Audit of a Group Financial Report (Including the Work of Component Auditors)* which may be useful to assurance practitioners when determining the extent, if any, of such reliance in the conduct of an assurance engagement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

evidence.¹¹¹ ~~The extent of procedures and evidence required depends on the agreed terms of the assurance engagement, type of assurance to be obtained, and the type of financial information involved. The assurance practitioner's ordinarily performs the following assurance procedures on the source data of for the prospective financial information ordinarily include:~~

- ~~(a) determining if the base financial information is sourced from a forecast or a mixture of a forecast and a projection;~~
- ~~(b)(a) evaluating the adequacy and reliability of the base (underlying) financial information/source data, including the extent of evidence (if any) provided by prior audits or reviews used;~~
- ~~(c) applicable internal control over the information systems used to capture and record the prospective financial information, and the expertise of the persons responsible for these systems;~~
- ~~(d)(b) determining if the base financial information is sourced from a forecast or a mixture of a forecast and a projection; if the base source of the prospective financial information is a mixture of a forecast and a projection:
 - ~~(i) understanding what documentation is available to support the inclusion of the projection;~~
 - ~~(ii) determining whether the projection has a material impact on the overall prospective financial information;~~
 - ~~(iii) assessing whether the responsible party has a reasonable justification for the inclusion of the projection; and~~
 - ~~(i) understanding how the forecast and projection have been combined and consistency checked;~~
 - ~~(ii) what documentation is available to support the inclusion of the projection;~~~~

¹¹¹ The concepts and discussions on obtaining evidence relevant to an audit engagement are contained in ASA 500 ~~Audit Evidence which~~ Evidence, which may be useful to assurance practitioners when determining the extent, if any, of evidence required in the conduct of an assurance engagement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (iii) ~~whether the responsible party has a reasonable justification for its inclusion; or~~
- (iv) ~~whether the projection has a material impact on the overall prospective financial information, and if so, whether applicable law or regulation allows the assurance practitioner to express an assurance conclusion on such prospective financial information; or~~
- ~~(e)(c)~~ if the ~~source of the prospective~~ base financial information is a forecast:
- (i) ~~considering~~ evaluating the accuracy of any prospective financial information prepared in prior time periods as compared to actual financial results, and the reasons provided for significant variances;
- (ii) ~~considering~~ the basis of preparation of the forecast; (including the extent to which statistical, mathematical, and computer-assisted techniques are used) and comparisons between this and the most recent historical financial information; and
- ~~(iii)~~ understanding the extent to which statistical, and mathematical modelling, ~~computer-assisted techniques~~ and other techniques have been used, and the reliability thereof; or
- ~~(d)~~ if the ~~base~~ source of the prospective financial information is a mixture of a forecast and historical financial information:
- ~~considering if~~ if the historical financial information has been previously audited or reviewed. ;
- ~~assessing the impact of the opinion type expressed on the assurance engagement; and~~
- ~~(i)~~ where possible, reading the associated audit or review working papers relating to the entity's financial report to identify any matters that may affect the source of the prospective ~~base~~ financial information or the prospective financial information itself; or

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- ~~(iii)~~(ii) ~~evaluating the appropriateness and reliability of the historical financial information if it the historical financial information has not been previously audited or reviewed, evaluating the appropriateness of its source, and its reliability and agreeing the base financial information source of the prospective financial information to underlying accounting records.-~~

Key Best-estimate Assumptions

~~A173-A92.~~ The assurance practitioner's procedures on the key best-estimate assumptions for the prospective financial information ordinarily include: (Ref: Para. 118(d))

- (a) reading the comparable ~~prior time period~~ financial report and, as appropriate, the most recent annual or interim financial information, as this may ~~be used to provide~~ be a yardstick useful starting point for assessing the reasonableness of the assumptions used in the preparation of the prospective financial information; and
- (b) understanding the source and reliability of the evidence supporting the best-estimate assumptions, including:
- (i) considering the ~~m~~ assumptions in light of historical financial information; including whether any reclassifications or adjustments have been made to reflect unusual or non-recurring items, or to correct known errors and uncertainties;
 - (ii) understanding the methods used to develop and apply assumptions, and the extent to which they are affected by the responsible party's judgement or are particularly ly sensitive to variation;
 - (iii) reviewing the entity's work papers accounting records and other documents, ~~including those supporting~~ the underlying assumptions;
- ~~(iv)~~ — evaluating the degree of reliability of the assumptions, ~~for example, if the entity is introducing a new product, the forecast time period covered could be short and broken into small segments, such as months. Alternatively, if the~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~entity's sole business owns a property under long-term lease, a relatively long prospective time period might be reasonable. It will also including e-considering:~~

- ~~(v)~~ their validity of the assumptions;
- ~~(vi)~~ the likelihood of the assumptions actually occurring; and
- ~~(vii)~~(iv) the effect on the ~~pro forma forecast~~prospective financial information if the assumptions vary;
- ~~(viii)~~(v) evaluating the risks or factors that may or may not be within the responsible party's control that could result in the forecast not being achieved. A high risk that there may be a significant difference between the prospective financial information and actual results may call into question, and that there may be a significant difference between the forecast and actual results could be relevant to an assessment of the suitability and reasonableness of the assumptions used as the basis for the preparation of the prospective financial information and their characterisation as best-estimate;
- ~~(ix)~~(vi) ~~an evaluation~~evaluating of whether the assumptions are within the entity's capacity to achieve;
- ~~(x)~~(vii) considering the documentation available to support the assumptions; including any immaterial hypothetical assumptions, to ensure there is a basis for their inclusion;
- ~~(xi)~~(viii) ~~considering determining whether~~ any hypothetical assumptions used ~~being are~~ immaterial, are not clearly ~~unrealistic in their basis, and are~~ consistent with the purpose of the prospective financial information; and
- ~~(xii)~~(ix) considering whether there are material hypothetical assumptions used in their preparation, and if so, take into account applicable law or

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~regulation that might not allow the inclusion of such assumptions as such assumptions are very unlikely to have reasonable grounds as the basis of preparation of the prospective financial information.~~¹¹²

~~Resultant when results shown in the prospective financial information are expressed in terms of a range:~~

~~that it provides meaningful information about the entity's future prospects by not being too large in scale;~~

~~evaluating the basis of establishing points in a range, and the range is not selected in a biased or misleading manner; and~~

~~ensuring that the variables that will have a significant effect on the outcome within the range are disclosed in the document.~~

Prospective Financial Information

~~A174.A93.~~ The assurance practitioner's procedures on the prospective financial information ~~itself~~ ordinarily include: (Ref: Para. 118(g))

- (a) where applicable, consider~~ing~~ the interrelationships of elements within the prospective financial information (for example, the statement of financial performance and the cash flow statement);
- (b) perform~~ing~~ analytical procedures ~~on the prospective financial information~~;
- (c) ~~consider evaluating~~ the appropriateness of the period of time covered by the prospective financial information, taking into account that it becomes more speculative ~~and less verifiable~~ as the length of the period covered increases.¹¹³
 - (i) enquiry of the responsible party on the reasons for the choice of time period;
 - (ii) evaluat~~ing~~e whether the time period is consistent with the entity's normal reporting period so as to

¹¹² See RG 170

¹¹³ For example, see ASIC's RG 170 for guidance regarding what timeframe ASIC considers is reasonable for the inclusion of prospective financial information.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

make it comparable, and therefore assists intended users make an informed assessment of the entity's prospects;

(iii) considering the operating cycle of the entity;

(iv) considering the degree of reliability of assumptions given the time period;

(v) considering the needs of the intended users of the prospective financial information;

(vi) considering whether any elapsed portion of the current time period is included in the prospective financial information, ~~the extent to which procedures need to be applied to the historical information will vary depending on the circumstances, for example, how much of the prospective period has elapsed;~~

~~(vii) considering where whether there are legal or regulatory requirements and/or other authoritative guidance that specify in respect of an acceptable time period for the prospective financial information to cover.¹⁴⁴~~

(d) performing a sensitivity analysis to test the responsiveness, or otherwise, of the prospective financial information to material changes in key assumptions underlying the information;

~~(d)~~(e) making clerical checks such as re-computations and reviewing internal consistency; that is , the actions the responsible party intends to take are compatible with each other and there are no inconsistencies in the determination of the amounts that are based on common variables, such as interest rates; of assumptions including those with common variables;

~~(e)~~(f) assessing the accuracy of any prospective financial information prepared in prior time periods as compared to

¹⁴⁴ For example, see ASIC's RG 170, paragraph 170.29, for guidance regarding what timeframe ASIC considers is reasonable for the inclusion of prospective financial information.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

actual financial results and the reasons provided for significant variances; and

~~(f)~~(g) performing an assessment whether the ~~preparation of the~~ prospective financial information is prepared on a reasonable basis, ~~and is not misleading/misstated,~~ based on evidence obtained throughout ~~the engagement~~the assurance engagement;

~~A175:A94.~~ The assurance practitioner ~~determines~~in the appropriateness of the recognition and measurement accounting policies used by the responsible party by:

(a) understanding the processes for ~~their selection and~~ and ~~approving the application of such policies~~ approval;

(b) understanding the differences, if any, between the policies adopted in the prospective financial information as compared to the most recent financial report;

(c) understanding the differences, if any, between the recognition and measurement accounting ~~policies~~ principles adopted compared to those from applicable Australian Accounting Standards ~~(including those which have been, or are proposed to be, superseded by the Australian Accounting Standards Board); and~~

~~— considering any change in accounting policy since the most recent financial report has disclosed along with the reason for the change, and its effect on the prospective financial information;~~

~~(e) — considering the impact of any changes on the underlying recognition and measurement of the prospective financial information;~~

~~(d) — any change in accounting policy since the most recent financial report is disclosed along with the reason for the change, and its effect on the prospective financial information;~~

assessing the suitability of the ~~considering the impact of any changes on the underlying~~ recognition and measurement ~~principles~~ olicies used as the applicable criteria for the preparation of the prospective financial

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~information, in terms of whether it causes the prospective financial information to be misleading;~~

~~assessing the suitability of the recognition and measurement accounting policies and principles used as applicable criteria for the preparation of the prospective financial information;~~

- ~~(e) evaluating evidence, including the reasonableness of the responsible party's oral and written representations;~~
- ~~(f) making enquires of the responsible party, and other experts and relevant parties; and~~
- ~~(g)(d) where the assurance practitioner identifies matters requiring further investigating, designing and performing further assurance procedures, if required, to reduce assurance engagement risk to an appropriate level.~~

Disclosure of Prospective Financial Information

~~A176. The assurance practitioner's procedures on the disclosure of the prospective financial information in the document ordinarily include:~~

- ~~(a) if it is a forecast, that appropriate disclosures are included in the document to enable the intended users to assess:
 - ~~(i) the validity of the assumptions on which the forecast is based;~~
 - ~~(ii) the likelihood of the assumptions actually occurring;~~
 - ~~(iii) the effect on the forecast if the assumptions vary;~~
 - ~~(iv) where applicable, a clear distinction between best-estimate assumptions and hypothetical assumptions;~~
 - ~~(v) material assumptions are adequately disclosed in the document, and clearly identified as representing the responsible party's best estimate and are based on reasonable objective grounds, and~~~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

hence are not subject to a high degree of uncertainty;

- ~~— ensuring any change in accounting policy since the most recent financial report is disclosed along with the reason for the change, and its effect on the prospective financial information;~~
- (b) ~~— reviewing the reasons for the inclusion of such accounting policies as were applied in the preparation of the prospective financial information and ensuring these are consistent with Australian Accounting Standards; and~~
- (e) ~~— ensuring the document includes a clear statement by the responsible party that the prospective financial information, is by nature, predictive, given it is based on assumptions, and actual results may differ materially.¹¹⁵~~

A177.A95. When the assurance practitioner obtains oral representations from the responsible party in respect of matters supporting the prospective financial information, the assurance practitioner ordinarily:

- (a) Evaluates their reasonableness and consistency with other evidence obtained, including other representations.
- (b) Considers whether those making the representations can be expected to be well informed on the particular matters.
- (c) Obtains appropriate corroborative evidence.¹¹⁶
- (d) Documents the key aspects of the oral representation.

Using the Work of ~~the Responsible Party's~~ Expert (Ref: Para. 121)

A178.A96. The assurance practitioner ~~needs to consider~~, ~~when using the work of an expert~~, the following ~~when evaluating the work of the responsible party's expert~~:

¹¹⁵ See RG 170, para 170.88.

¹¹⁶ The concepts and discussions on corroborative evidence relevant in investigating unusual fluctuations relevant to an audit engagement are contained in Auditing ASA 520 *Analytical Procedures*, and may be helpful in determining appropriate corroborative evidence in an assurance engagement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (a) the nature of the work performed, and the risks of material misstatement in the expert's work;
- (b) ~~assess~~ whether the assumptions and methodologies that have been used seem reasonable, and draw on source data that appears to be appropriate;
- (c) the significance of that expert's work in the context of the assurance engagement;
- (d) the assurance practitioner's knowledge of and experience with previous work performed by that expert;
- (e) the extent of review of the expert's work by the assurance practitioner; and
- (f) the results/findings of the experts work, and whether it is to be included in the document.

Adjustments identified by the Assurance Practitioner

~~A179-A97.~~ The assurance practitioner should communicate matters relating to the prospective financial information; that, in their professional judgement, require the responsible party to make a material adjustment to the prospective financial information. Such communications may be made orally or in writing, and should be done as soon as the matter is identified to enable the responsible party to investigate the matter(s). The responsible party is then able to advise the assurance practitioner of their findings and provide supporting evidence, as well as their decision on whether they will make the adjustment to the prospective financial information. The assurance practitioner is then able to evaluate the evidence provided to consider if the responsible party's decision on the adjustment is acceptable to the assurance practitioner. (Ref: Para. 123)

~~A180. In circumstances where the responsible party does not make adjustment and the assurance practitioner disagrees with the decision, the assurance practitioner considers the implications for the assurance report. (Ref: Para. 109)~~

Evaluating the Sufficiency and Appropriateness of Evidence Obtained (Ref: Para. 125-126)

A98. The assurance practitioner uses professional judgement in determining the sufficiency and appropriateness of the evidence

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

obtained based on the procedures performed. ~~The quantity of~~ Eevidence obtained by the assurance practitioner ~~that is in quantity~~ is a measure of the sufficiency of the evidence, whilst the quality of that evidence obtained is a measure of its appropriateness; that is, its relevance and its reliability.¹¹⁷ The assurance practitioner ordinarily expresses a limited assurance conclusion in respect of both the prospective financial information and use of the best-estimate assumptions as a reasonable basis for the prospective financial information, due to the nature of the evidence available:

- (a) While evidence may be available to support the underlying best-estimate assumptions, such evidence is itself generally future oriented and, therefore, speculative in nature, as distinct from the evidence ordinarily available in the audit or review of historical financial information. Consequently, when reporting on the reasonableness of the responsible party's assumptions, the assurance practitioner ordinarily provides only a limited level of assurance on the assumptions.
- (b) The assurance practitioner is ~~therefore not in a position to conclude as to whether the results shown in the prospective financial information~~ ~~from a forecast will be achieved.~~ If ~~the results it is~~are expressed as a range, the assurance practitioner cannot conclude, or provide any assurance that actual results will fall within the range.
- (c) The assurance practitioner obtains evidence to support an assessment of whether any uncorrected misstatements or adjustments are material, individually or in aggregate, to the prospective financial information.
- ~~(b)~~(d) The assurance practitioner obtains evidence whether the entity has complied with the recognition and measurements policies of the recognition and measurement policies included in the applicable financial reporting framework (which in Australia is ordinarily those contained in applicable Australian Accounting Standards).

~~A181. While evidence may be available to support the underlying assumptions, such evidence is itself generally future oriented and, therefore, speculative in nature, as distinct from the evidence~~

¹¹⁷ The concepts and discussions on evidence relevant to an audit engagement are contained in Auditing Standard ASA 500 *Audit Evidence*, and may be helpful in determining the evidence applicable to an assurance engagement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~ordinarily available in the audit or review of historical financial information. Such evidence is primarily obtained through enquiry and analytical procedures. The assurance practitioner is not able to express a conclusion on any hypothetical assumptions used because by their nature, sufficient appropriate evidence is not available to support such assumptions. The assurance practitioner is therefore not in a position to conclude as to whether the results shown in the pro forma forecast prospective financial information will be achieved. If the prospective financial information forma forecast is expressed as a range, the assurance practitioner cannot conclude, or provide any assurance that actual results will fall within the range. The assurance practitioner is not able to express a conclusion on any hypothetical assumptions used because by their nature, sufficient appropriate voidance is not available to support such assumptions. (Ref: Para. 110)~~

~~A182, A99.~~ If the assurance practitioner identifies that the prospective financial information may be materially misstated, ~~or misleading,~~ the assurance practitioner carries out additional procedures, or performs more extensive procedures to enable ~~them~~ the assurance practitioner to form a conclusion, including whether a modified conclusion is required. ~~(Ref: Para. 111)~~

Other Information included in the document (Ref: Para. 127-128)

Material inconsistencies and misstatements of fact in other information that come to the assurance practitioner's attention may raise doubt about the conclusions drawn from evidence previously obtained and possibly, about the basis for the assurance practitioner's conclusion in the assurance report. Assurance practitioners need to pay particular attention to the form and content of the other information (for example if it is in graphical or table form) when looking for inconsistencies. When discussing an apparent material misstatement of fact with the responsible party, the assurance practitioner may not be able to sufficiently evaluate the validity of certain information and the responsible party's responses to the assurance practitioner's enquiries, and may conclude that valid differences of opinion or judgements exist.

~~If the assurance practitioner identifies material inconsistencies between the prospective financial information and the other information, the assurance practitioner discusses the inconsistency with the responsible party, and determine~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~whether the prospective financial information and/or the other information needs to be revised. The assurance practitioner needs to consider the nature of the misstatement in terms of its possible impact on the prospective financial information, as well as the other information.~~

- ~~A183. If the assurance practitioner and the responsible party agrees to the revision, the assurance practitioner should requests an updated copy of the document in order to ensure the revisions have been made.~~
- ~~A184. If the responsible party refuses to make the revisions, the assurance practitioner considers whether to:~~
- ~~A185. obtaining legal advice on the appropriate course of the action for the assurance practitioner;~~
- ~~A186. including in the assurance report an Other Matter paragraph¹¹⁸ that describes the material inconsistency and/or misstatement of fact;~~
- ~~A187. withdrawing consent for the responsible party to include the assurance report in the document; and/or~~
- ~~A188.A100. withdrawing from the assurance engagement, where the withdrawal is possible under applicable law or regulation.~~

Going Concern Considerations ~~(Ref. Para. 114-116)~~

- ~~A189.A101. The assurance practitioner considers the appropriateness of the going concern assumption of the entity when the nature of the assurance engagement and the type of financial information being opined on means that such an assessment could have implications for the assurance report. Ordinarily in an engagement to report on prospective financial information, the going concern assumption is not relevant to the assurance practitioner's conclusion as the nature of the information is subjective, prospective (based on anticipated events or transactions that have not occurred) and its preparation requires the exercise of considerable judgement by the responsible party. ~~(Ref. Para. 131-116)~~~~

¹¹⁸ The concepts and discussion on the use of an Other Matter paragraph relevant to an audit engagement are contained in ASA 706 *Emphasis of Matter Paragraphs and Other Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report*, paragraphs 8-Aus 8.1, and may be helpful in determining its form, content and location in the Investigating Accountant's Report applicable to an assurance engagement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~A190.~~A102. If the assurance practitioner considers that performing an going concern assessment¹¹⁹ is relevant, the assurance practitioner ordinarily ~~takes into account~~ considers the entity's prepared forecasts, cash flow statements, ~~D~~irectors' working capital statements, and financial position and any other events or conditions that are relevant to the assessment. For example, if the prospects for profitability are not supported by adequate cash flows, then both the forecast financial performance statement and the ongoing viability of the entity are at risk. There may also be mitigating factors that in the assurance practitioner's professional judgement, eliminate the going concern uncertainty. These factors may include: (Ref: Para. 132-116)

- (a) unequivocal financial support provided from another entity which has the capacity to provide support, or
- (b) the underlying transaction or event giving rise to the document (for example, a capital raising) will raise sufficient funds to result in the entity becoming a going concern.

~~A191.~~A103. Such mMitigating factors should be supported by appropriate written evidence. In such circumstances, the assurance practitioner needs to evaluate and document how the unequivocal financial support or proceeds from the fundraising issue will provide funding for future operations of the entity that will result in the entity becoming a going concern. Consideration should be given to any proposed underlying of any capital raising and the circumstances in which the proposed underwriting may not occur. The assurance practitioner should also consider requesting a written representation from the responsible party regarding the appropriateness of the going concern assumption.

~~A192.~~A104. If the assurance practitioner does not consider the going concern assumption to be appropriate to the entity, the implications for the assurance report depend on whether the responsible party has modified the basis of preparation of the prospective financial information from that of a going concern: (Ref: Para. 133)

- (a) if the assurance practitioner does not consider the basis to be appropriate, then the conclusion in the assurance report should be modified (adverse opinion) on the basis of the

¹¹⁹ The concepts and discussions on performing an going concern assessment of an entity, relevant to an audit engagement are contained in Auditing ASA 570 *Going Concern*, and may be helpful in performing an going concern assessment in an assurance engagement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

going concern assumption being inappropriate to the financial information; or

- (b) if the assurance practitioner considers the basis to be appropriate, then the assurance report may include an emphasis of matter paragraph in the assurance conclusion to draw attention to the disclosure of this fact in the prospective financial information.

Consideration of Events up to the date of the Assurance Report

(Ref: Para. 134-135~~4~~)

~~A193~~.A105. The extent of consideration by the assurance practitioner of events or transactions occurring after the date of performing assurance procedures and before the date of the assurance report (commonly referred to as subsequent events) depends on:

- (a) the agreed terms of engagement for reporting of subsequent events;
- ~~(b)~~ the potential for such events ~~;~~
- ~~(e)~~(b) to materially affect the prospective financial information in the document in terms of requiring comment on, or adjustment to, the prospective financial information; ~~and~~
 - ~~(i)~~ ~~whether the events or transactions causes the prospective financial information to be misleading or deceptively misstated;~~
- ~~(c)~~ whether such events or transactions are within the ordinary business of the entity;
- (d) whether such events or transactions causes the prospective financial information to be potentially misleading or deceptive; and
- (e) the requirements of applicable law, regulation, or professional standards.¹²⁰

¹²⁰ The concepts and discussions on subsequent events relevant to an audit engagement are contained in Auditing Standard ASA 560 *Subsequent Events*, and may be helpful in determining the principles applicable to an assurance engagement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Consideration of Events Identified after the date of the Assurance Report (Ref: Para. 136-137)

~~A194.~~A106. If there are material deficiencies, ~~misleading statements~~, or significant matters omitted from the document, which come to the assurance practitioner's attention ~~after~~:

- ~~(a)~~ in the case of a public document, ~~;~~
- ~~(b)~~ after it has been lodged with the appropriate regulatory body, and
- ~~(c)~~ before the relevant date,
- ~~(d)~~(a) the assurance practitioner considers the implications for the assurance report, as well as any reporting obligations the assurance practitioner may have to inform the entity ~~making the offer~~ issuing the document; or
- ~~(e)~~ in the case of a document ~~other than~~ that is not a public document, ~~after~~ ~~;~~
- ~~(f)~~ ~~after~~ it has been finalised and issued to its intended user(s), and before the
- ~~(g)~~ ~~before the~~ relevant date,
- ~~(h)~~(b) the assurance practitioner considers the implications for the assurance report, as well as any reporting obligations the assurance practitioner may have to inform the entity ~~making the offer~~ issuing the document.

~~A195.~~ If ~~there are~~ material deficiencies, ~~misleading statements~~, or significant matters related to the prospective financial information ~~are~~ omitted from the document, ~~;~~

~~A196.~~ ~~related to the prospective financial information on which the assurance practitioner has opined in the assurance report and c;~~

~~A197.~~ ~~which have been omitted by the entity from the document;~~

~~A198.~~ ~~which come to the assurance practitioner's attention after~~ prior to the relevant date, ~~;~~ the assurance practitioner discusses the omissions with the responsible party. ~~If the responsible party and~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~A199. the entity has not amended the document, or issued a supplementary document to correct such material deficiencies, misleading statements, or the omission of significant matters refuses to correct such omissions.;~~

~~A200.~~A107. the assurance practitioner ~~ordinarily needs to~~ withdraws consent for the entity to include the assurance report in the document, and ~~consider if there~~ evaluates if there are any ~~other~~ applicable law or regulation relates to such omissions that impose particular reporting obligations on the assurance practitioner.

Written Representations (Ref: Para. 138-141)

~~A201.~~A108. The assurance practitioner ~~needs to~~ requests, and obtains, a written representation letter from the responsible party at the completion of the assurance engagement.¹²¹ The assurance practitioner ordinarily provides the responsible party with a specific list of matters requiring the responsible party's representations. Such matters may ~~be~~ already ~~be~~ contained in documentation reviewed by the assurance practitioner, including minutes of meetings, written acceptance of the assurance engagement terms, and due diligence committee DDC reports. ~~T, and~~ therefore the assurance practitioner only needs to request the inclusion of such matters in the written representation letter if the assurance practitioner considers it appropriate in ~~the engagement~~ the assurance engagement circumstances. Appendix 34 provides an illustrative written representation letter. (Ref: Para. 139)

~~A202. Examples of matters may include an acknowledgement by the responsible party of:~~

~~A203. of the agreed terms of the assurance engagement;~~

~~A204. of their responsibility for:~~

~~A205. the preparation of the prospective financial information for the periods stated, in accordance with the applicable criteria that was selected and determined by them;~~

~~A206. the selection of the best estimate assumptions;~~

¹²¹ The concepts and discussions on obtaining written representations relevant to an audit engagement are contained in Auditing Standard ASA 580 *Written Representations*, and may be helpful in determining the form and content of written representations applicable to an assurance engagement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- ~~A207. all other information included in the document, other than reports prepared by experts who have provided their consent for their inclusion;~~
- ~~A208. the overall document;~~
- ~~A209. the establishment and maintenance of proper internal control related to financial reporting;~~
- ~~A210. the maintenance of proper financial records and systems which facilitate the preparation of the financial information;~~
- ~~A211. for providing all information requested by the assurance practitioner;~~
- ~~A212. for any uncorrected misstatements are immaterial, either individually or in aggregate to the financial information; and that all such misstatements have been previously advised to the assurance practitioner;~~
- ~~A213. for providing all material financial information, financial records and related data, and all other information relevant to financial information related to the engagement (for example fraud, errors, regulatory issues or communications);~~
- ~~A214. for confirming the going concern basis of preparation of the financial information is appropriate in the document; and~~
- ~~A215. that there are no material changes to the financial information between the date of the assurance report and the relevant date.~~
- ~~A216.~~~~A109.~~ Oral or written representations made by the responsible party cannot replace other evidence the assurance practitioner could reasonably expect to be available. For example, relevant minutes of meetings of the Board of Directors, or a published statement by the Board of Directors acknowledging responsibility for the preparation and presentation of prospective financial information, may be considered appropriate sufficient evidence under the circumstances. To the extent the other evidence obtained is inconsistent with the responsible party's oral or written representations, the assurance practitioner should investigate and evaluate such inconsistencies, with a view to obtaining sufficient appropriate evidence. In such cases, additional procedures may be required in order to achieve this.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~A217.A110.~~ If the responsible party does not provide such ~~a letter~~the written representation letter, or refuses to provide it, the assurance practitioner ~~needs to consider the implications of this on the assurance report. Having no written representation letter from the responsible party may qualify or issue a result in a qualified conclusion or a disclaimer of conclusion in the assurance report,~~ on the basis of a limitation on the scope of the assurance engagement. The assurance practitioner may also include a restriction paragraph on the distribution of, or use of, the assurance report.

~~A111.~~ An inability to obtain sufficient appropriate evidence regarding a matter that has, or may have, a material effect on the evaluation of the prospective financial information in the document, when such evidence would ordinarily be available, constitutes a limitation on the scope of the assurance engagement, even if a written representation from the responsible party has been received by the assurance practitioner on the matter. ~~(Ref: Para.143)~~

Forming the Assurance Conclusion

~~A218.A112.~~ Applicable law or regulation may preclude the assurance practitioner from expressing a modified conclusion in an assurance report that is included in a public document. Where this is the case, and the assurance practitioner concludes that a modified conclusion is nevertheless appropriate, the assurance practitioner discusses the matter with the responsible party. If the responsible party does not agree to make the changes required to enable the assurance practitioner to issue an unmodified conclusion, the assurance practitioner considers whether they are able to withhold the assurance report, withdraw from the assurance engagement, or seek legal advice.

~~A219.A113.~~ ~~Appendix 4 provides an illustrative written representation letter.~~

Forming the Assurance Conclusion (Ref: Para. 1271-128)

~~A220.~~ The assurance practitioner's evaluation of the sufficiency and appropriateness of the evidence obtained during the assurance engagement takes account of:

- ~~(a) the source of the financial information (historical or non-historical) and what adjustments have been made to it;~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- ~~(b) — the fact the planned assurance level on the prospective financial information is limited;~~
- ~~(c) — whether the best estimate assumptions provide an objectively reasonable basis for the preparation of the prospective financial information;~~
- ~~(d) — the assurance practitioner’s assessment of whether any uncorrected misstatements or adjustments are material, individually or in aggregate, to the prospective financial information;~~
- ~~(e) — whether the entity has complied with the recognition and measurements principles of the applicable financial reporting framework (which in Australia is ordinarily those contained in applicable Australian Accounting Standards); and~~
- ~~(f) — whether the prospective financial information includes adequate disclosure of the significant recognition and measurement accounting policies selected and applied in its preparation; and~~
- ~~(g) — whether sufficient appropriate evidence has been obtained to support the assurance practitioner’s conclusion.~~

Preparing the Assurance Report ~~(Ref: Para. 127)~~

~~A221.A114.~~ The assurance report may be prepared solely in respect of a particular type of financial information (prospective financial information) or be a composite report where two or more of types of financial information are the subject of the assurance report (for example historical financial information and prospective financial information).

~~(Ref: Para. 145)~~

~~A222.A115.~~ If the assurance practitioner is preparing a composite assurance report the assurance practitioner needs to ensure: (Ref: Para. 146)

- ~~(a) that the different types of financial information are clearly identified in the document, and separately referred to in the assurance report; and~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (b) the assurance report clearly identifies and segregates the ~~work carried out~~ assurance procedures conducted, and type of assurance expressed, on ~~the each different~~ types of financial information.

Basic Elements of the Assurance Report (Ref: Para. 147)

~~A223. The assurance report on prospective financial information may contain a statement that the assurance practitioner's procedures were more limited than for a reasonable assurance engagement and consequently they do not enable the assurance practitioner to obtain the assurance necessary to become aware of all significant matters that might be identified in a reasonable assurance engagement.~~

~~A224. The assurance report cannot be dated earlier than the date on which the assurance practitioner obtained evidence on which the assurance practitioner's conclusion is based, including receipt of a written representation letter from the responsible party.~~

~~A225:~~A116. In respect of an assurance report that is being included in a public document prepared in accordance with the *Corporations Act 2001*, the assurance practitioner also needs to ensure that the assurance report is:

- ~~(a) included in the public document;~~
- ~~(b)(a)~~ appropriately cross referenced and consistent with other information disclosed in the public document; and
- ~~(c)(b)~~ appropriately positioned in the public document in relation to the prospective financial information on which the assurance practitioner provides a conclusion.¹²²

Unmodified and Modified Conclusions

~~Unmodified conclusions~~ (Ref: Para. 1)

~~A226:~~A117. Appendix 54 contains illustrative examples of unmodified conclusions in an of assurance reports.

~~Modified conclusions~~ (Ref: Para. 133-134)

~~When the assurance practitioner expresses a modified conclusion in the assurance report, the reasons for the modification should be properly~~

¹²² See ASIC's RG 170.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~described, with the effects appropriately quantified and disclosed in the assurance report.~~

~~Appendix 5 contains illustrative examples of modified conclusions¹²³ in an assurance report.~~

~~A qualified conclusion is expressed when:~~

~~the assurance practitioner concludes that misstatements, individual or in aggregate are material but not pervasive to the prospective financial information;~~

~~matters have come to the assurance practitioner's attention that cause the assurance practitioner to believe that the prospective financial information is not prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with the applicable criteria;~~

~~the assurance practitioner is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate evidence on which to base a conclusion, but concludes that the possible effects on the prospective financial information of undetected misstatements, if any could be material but not pervasive to the prospective financial information; or~~

~~the assurance practitioner determines there has been a material scope limitation regarding the possible adjustments to the prospective financial information that might have been determined to be necessary had the limitation not existed.~~

~~A qualified conclusion is expressed as being "except for" the effects, or possible effects, of the matter to which the qualification relates.~~

~~An adverse conclusion is expressed when the assurance practitioner concludes (having obtained sufficient appropriate evidence) that misstatements, individually or in aggregate, are both material and pervasive to the prospective financial information. In these circumstances, the assurance practitioner ordinarily concludes that a qualification is not adequate to disclose the misleading or incomplete nature of the prospective financial information. The form of the adverse conclusion is ordinarily that the prospective financial information is not prepared fairly, in all material respects, in accordance with the applicable criteria. (Ref: Para. 67)~~

¹²³ The concepts and discussions on modifications to the opinion relevant to an audit engagement are contained in Auditing Standard ASA 705 *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*, and may be helpful in determining the nature, type and opinion wording of modifications applicable to an assurance engagement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~An disclaimer of conclusion is expressed when the assurance practitioner is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate evidence on which to base a conclusion, and concludes that the possible effects on the financial information of undetected misstatements, if any, could be both material and pervasive to the prospective financial information. (Ref: Para. 68)~~

Use of Going Concern Assumption Appropriate but a Material Uncertainty Exists (Ref: Para. 152)

~~A227. When the assurance practitioner determines that a material uncertainty exists that casts significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern, the assurance practitioner considers the adequacy of disclosures made in the prospective financial information and/or the document.~~

~~A118. The assurance practitioner considers the adequacy of the going concern related disclosures in the document as follows:~~

- ~~(a) If, in the assurance practitioner's professional judgement, the responsible party's disclosures are considered adequate, in terms of both the description of the principal events or conditions that contribute to cast significant doubt on the entity's going concern ability, as well as the fact that a material uncertainty exists related to the events or conditions and therefore the entity may be unable to realise its assets and discharge its liabilities in the normal course of business, then the auditor-assurance practitioner expresses an unmodified conclusion, with an eEmphasis of mMatter paragraph. The Eemphasis of mMatter pParagraph is intended to highlight the existence of the material uncertainty and to draw attention to the responsible party's disclosures; or-~~
- ~~(b) If, in the assurance practitioner's professional judgement the disclosures are is inadequate, the assurance practitioner expresses a qualified conclusion or adverse conclusion, as appropriate.~~

Consent to the Inclusion of the Assurance Report in a Public Document (Ref: Para. 153-154)

~~A228.~~A119. For assurance reports in connection with a public document prepared in accordance with the *Corporations Act 2001*, the assurance practitioner is required to consent to the form and context

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

in which the assurance report is included in that public document.¹²⁴ Consequently, the assurance practitioner ordinarily reads all other information included in the public document to consider whether it contains any material inconsistencies or material misstatements of fact as compared to the prospective financial information.

~~A229~~.A120. There may be some circumstances where the assurance practitioner does not consider it appropriate to provide the consent. For example:

- (a) where there are material inconsistencies between the prospective financial information and other information which remain uncorrected by the responsible party;
- (b) where there are material misstatements of fact ~~between relevant to~~ the prospective financial information ~~and other information~~ which remain uncorrected by the responsible party; ~~or~~
- (c) where the assurance practitioner does not consider the assurance report will be used for the intended purpose.

Documentation (Ref: Para. 155)

~~A230~~.A121. Sufficient appropriate documentation¹²⁵ should include a record of the assurance practitioner's reasoning on all significant matters that required the exercise of professional judgement, together with the assurance practitioner's conclusions on the matters. In areas involving difficult questions of estimate, principle or judgement, the documentation should include the relevant facts that were known by the assurance practitioner at the time the conclusion was reached.

~~A231~~.A122. In applying professional judgement to assessing the extent of documentation to be prepared and retained, the assurance practitioner ordinarily considers what would be necessary ~~for by~~ another experienced assurance practitioner who has no previous experience with the assurance engagement to ~~provide obtain~~ an understanding of the work performed and the basis of the significant decisions taken. It is, however, neither necessary nor practicable to

¹²⁴ See Section 716 of the *Corporations Act 2001*.

¹²⁵ The concepts and discussions on documentation relevant to an audit engagement are contained in Auditing ASA 230 *Audit Documentation*, and may be helpful in determining appropriate documentation to be obtained in an assurance engagement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

document every matter the assurance practitioner considers during the assurance engagement.

Pro Forma Forecast

Engagement Acceptance

Preconditions for Acceptance (Ref: Para. 158-159 ~~Error! Reference source not found.~~)

~~A123. The responsible party is ultimate responsible for the preparation and presentation of all information (including all assumptions and pro forma adjustments) used in the preparation of the pro forma forecast in the document.~~

~~A124. Assurance engagements on a pro forma forecast ~~that~~ ordinarily result in a limited assurance conclusion being expressed. This is due to its nature being related to events and actions that have not yet occurred, and may not occur. Evidence available to support the underlying assumptions may be available, however such evidence is itself generally future orientated and, therefore, speculative in nature. The assurance practitioner is therefore not in a position to express an opinion as to whether the results shown in the pro forma forecast will be achieved. Further given the nature of the evidence available in assessing the reasonableness of the assumptions on which the pro forma forecast is based, it is ordinarily difficult ~~for~~ the assurance practitioner to obtain a level of satisfaction sufficient to express a reasonable assurance conclusion that the assumptions are free of material misstatement. Consequently, the assurance practitioner ordinarily provides a limited assurance conclusion on such assumptions.~~

~~A232. If the base financial information that is the source of the pro forma forecast has not been subject to an audit or review that has resulted in an unmodified opinion being issued, the assurance practitioner is ordinarily unable to provide a limited assurance conclusion on the pro forma forecast. In such circumstances, the assurance practitioner discusses the matter with the responsible party, and may consequently agree to undertake and report on the proper compilation of the pro forma forecast rather than the pro forma forecast itself.~~

~~**Agreeing on the Terms of the Assurance Engagement** (Ref: Para. ~~Error! Reference source not found.~~)~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~A233. Any pro forma transactions and adjustments made to the base financial information (which maybe historical or a mixture of historical forecast), together with any assumptions made, are based on a stated basis of preparation, which is selected by the responsible party. The assurance practitioner has no responsibility under the terms of the assurance engagement to perform an assessment of the appropriateness, or otherwise, of that selected stated basis of preparation.~~

Planning the Assurance Engagement (Ref: Para. 163~~Error! Reference source not found.~~)

Planning Activities

~~A234, A125.~~ In addition to the application and other explanatory material in paragraph A77~~A21~~, the following planning activities assist the assurance practitioner in the planning process:

- ~~(a) understanding any applicable law(s) or regulation(s) that may be applicable to the assurance engagement;~~
- ~~(b) understanding the needs of users of the pro forma forecast;~~
- ~~(c) applicable internal control over the information systems used to capture and record the prospective financial information, and the expertise of the persons responsible for these systems;~~
 - ~~assessing the suitability of the recognition and measurement accounting policies used as the stated basis of preparation, as well as determining, for instance:~~
- ~~(d) the appropriateness of any transactions or adjustments made to the base financial information;~~
- ~~(e) the appropriateness of the pro forma adjustments to record the transactions or events for which the base financial information is being adjusted;~~
- ~~(f) identifying the source of the base financial information used to prepare the pro forma forecast;~~
- ~~(g) if it has been sourced from a mixture of historical and forecast financial information, consider:~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- ~~(h) — the reasoning for combining historical and forecast financial information;~~
- ~~(i) — whether the historical financial information has been previously audited or reviewed; the type(s) of opinion expressed in the auditor's report; and the extent to which it has been used; and~~
- ~~(j) — if it has been sourced from a forecast, consider~~
- ~~(k) — the source of the forecast;~~
- ~~(l) — the basis of preparation of the forecast (including the extent to which statistical, mathematical and computer-assisted techniques are used) and comparisons between this and the most recent historical financial information;~~
 - ~~◇ — the basis of any assumptions used;~~
 - ~~◇ — the applicable criteria used and time period covered;~~
- ~~(m)(a) understanding the nature of the whether the pro forma adjustments, including are historical in nature, or "as if":~~
 - ~~(i) if the adjustments reflect actual transactions or events achieved in the actual time period in which they occurred, they are historical adjustments; or~~
 - ~~(ii) if the adjustments reflect anticipated transactions or events that have not yet happened, or will not happen; or the indirect results of events or transactions as if they had been achieved in a prior time period or earlier in the current period, rather than when they were actually achieved they are known as "as if" adjustments; and~~
- ~~(n) — understanding the methods used to develop and apply the assumptions;~~
- ~~(o) — considering any if the assurance practitioner has previous knowledge of the entity's historical financial information, this which may be used to provide a measure for assessing the reasonableness of the assumptions used in the preparation of the pro forma forecast;~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (p) ~~determining the accuracy of any forecast(s) prepared in prior time periods and the reasons for material variances;~~
 - (q) ~~understanding the nature of the documentation prepared by the entity supporting the assumptions used in the preparation of the pro forma forecast;~~
 - (r) ~~understanding the nature of any pro forma adjustments (including consolidation adjustments) that have been made;~~
 - (s)(b) ~~understanding the methodology used by the responsible party for the combination of the base financial information with forecast the prospective financial information; and the pro forma adjustments;~~
 - (t) ~~identifying other relevant financial information available in the public domain;~~
 - (u) ~~understanding applicable internal control over the information systems used to capture and record the financial information, and the expertise of the persons responsible for these systems;~~
 - (v) ~~establishing and evaluating the continued appropriateness of quantitative materiality levels, and where appropriate, considering qualitative materiality factors; and~~
- ~~A235. developing expectations for use when performing analytical procedures. Any pro forma transactions and adjustments made to the base financial information may be (which may be historical or a mixture of historical and prospective forecast), together with any assumptions made, are based on a stated basis of preparation the applicable criteria, which is selected by the responsible party. The assurance practitioner has no responsibility under the terms of the assurance engagement to perform an assessment of the appropriateness, or otherwise, of that selected stated basis of preparation.~~

~~A236.~~

~~A237.~~

~~A238-A126. ÷~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (a) ~~designing and performing further assurance procedures to reduce assurance engagement risk to an appropriate level;~~
- (b) ~~evaluating evidence, including the reasonableness of the responsible party's oral and written representations; and~~
- (c) ~~the adequacy of financial information disclosures included in the document.~~

Performing ~~the Engagement~~the assurance engagement (Ref: Para. 163~~Error!~~
~~Reference source not found.~~)

Assurance Procedures

Source Data

~~In addition to the application and other explanatory material in paragraph A24, when designing and performing assurance procedures, the assurance practitioner's procedures on the source data for the pro forma forecast ordinarily include:~~

~~determining if the base financial data is sourced from a forecast or a mixture of forecast and historical financial information;~~

~~evaluating the adequacy and reliability of the source used, including the extent of evidence reliance (if any) provided by prior time period audited or reviewed financial reports;~~

~~if the base financial information is forecast:~~

~~considering the accuracy of any forecast(s) prepared in prior time periods and the reasons for material variances;~~

~~considering the basis of preparation of the forecast (including the extent to which statistical, mathematical and computer assisted techniques are used) and comparisons between this and the most recent historical financial information;~~

~~understanding the extent to which statistical, mathematical modelling, and other techniques have been used, and the reliability thereof;~~

~~if the base financial information is mixture of forecast and historical financial information:~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~if the historical financial information has been previously audited or reviewed;~~

~~assessing the impact of the opinion expressed on the assurance engagement;~~

~~where possible, reading the associated audit or review working papers relating to the entity's financial report to identify any matters that may affect the base financial information; and~~

~~if the historical financial information has not been previously audited or reviewed, evaluating the appropriateness of its source, and its reliability and agree agreeing the base financial information to underlying accounting records.~~

Pro forma ~~Transactions and~~ Adjustments

~~A239-A127.~~ In addition to the application and other explanatory material in paragraph A93~~A24~~, when designing and performing assurance procedures, the assurance practitioner's procedures on the ~~pro forma transactions and~~ pro forma adjustments for the pro forma forecast ordinarily include:

- (a) ~~considering the effects~~ reflecting the results of any identified uncorrected immaterial misstatements from the prior year's audited or reviewed financial report;
- (b) identifying ~~reflecting~~ any changes made by the responsible party to the recognition and measurement accounting policies from the prior time period, and if so, the nature of the change and its effect;
- ~~(c) reviewing the documentation prepared by the entity to support the adjustments and transactions;~~
- ~~(d) ensuring all pro forma adjustments considered material by the responsible party and the assurance practitioner are reflected in the resultant pro forma forecast. Pro forma adjustments are ordinarily considered material if their omission causes the pro forma forecast to be misleading;~~
- ~~(e)~~(c) reviewing and assessing the suitability of pro forma ~~transactions~~, adjustments ~~and assumptions~~ made to reflect the effects of the transaction(s) or event(s) for which adjustment is being made, as compared to the stated basis of applicable criteria preparation ~~(being the ordinarily the~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~appropriate~~ recognition and measurement accounting policies adopted by the entity, which are consistent with Australian Accounting Standards and as disclosed in the document);

- ~~(f)~~(d) confirming the mathematical accuracy of the calculations ~~performed in deriving and applying the pro forma adjustments and transactions to base financial information and deriving to the the~~ pro forma forecast; and
- (g) ~~ensuring all pro forma adjustments considered material by the responsible party and the assurance practitioner are reflected in the resultant pro forma forecast. Pro forma adjustments are ordinarily considered material if their omission causes the pro forma forecast to be misstated~~ensuring the methodology used by the responsible party for the combination of the base financial information with the pro forma transactions and adjustments.
- (h) ~~Key Assumptions~~
- (i) ~~In addition to the application and other explanatory material in paragraph A24, when designing and performing assurance procedures, the assurance practitioner's procedures on the assumptions for the pro forma forecast ordinarily include:~~
- (j) ~~reading the comparable prior time period financial report and, as appropriate, the most recent annual or interim financial report; as this information may be used to provide a yardstick useful starting point for assessing the reasonableness of the assumptions used in the preparation of the pro forma forecast;~~
- (k) ~~evaluating the source and reliability of the evidence supporting key assumptions including:~~
- (l) ~~considering the assumptions in light of the historical financial information, including whether any reclassifications or adjustments have been made to reflect unusual or non-recurring items, or to correct known errors and uncertainties;~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (m) — ~~understanding the methods used to develop and apply assumptions, and the extent to which they are affected by the responsible party's judgement or are particularly sensitive to variation;~~
- (n) — ~~reviewing the entity's work papers accounting records and other documents, including those supporting underlying assumptions;~~
- (o) — ~~considering the degree of reliability of assumptions, for example, if the entity is introducing a new product, the forecast time period covered could be short and broken into small segments, such as months. Alternatively, if the entity's sole business owns a property under long-term lease, a relatively long prospective time period might be reasonable. It will also include considering, including their validity, likelihood of actually occurring and:~~
 - (p) — ~~the validity of the assumptions;~~
 - (q) — ~~the likelihood of the assumptions actually occurring; and~~
 - (r) — ~~the effect on the pro forma forecast if the assumptions vary;~~
- (s) — ~~evaluating the risks or factors that may or may not be within the responsible party's control that could result in the forecast not being achieved. A high risk, and that there may be a significant difference between the forecast and actual results, may call into question the suitability and reasonableness of the assumptions used as the basis for the preparation of the pro forma forecast and their characterisation as best estimate;~~
- (t) — ~~evaluating an evaluation of whether the assumptions are within the entity's capacity to achieve;~~
- (u) — ~~considering the documentation available to support the assumptions; including any hypothetical assumptions to ensure there is a basis for their inclusion;~~
- (v) — ~~determining any any hypothetical assumptions used are immaterial, are not clearly realistic, and consistent with the purpose of the pro forma forecast used being immaterial, are not clearly unrealistic in their basis, and are consistent with the purpose of the pro forma forecast; and~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (w) ~~determining whether there are material hypothetical assumptions used in their preparation, of the pro forma forecast and if so, considering take into account applicable law or regulation that might not allow the inclusion of such assumptions as such assumptions are very unlikely to have reasonable grounds as the basis of preparation.~~¹²⁶
- (x) Resultant Pro Forma Forecast
- (y) In addition to the application and other explanatory material in paragraph A24, when designing and performing assurance procedures, the assurance practitioner's procedures on the pro forma forecast in the document ordinarily include:
- (z) where applicable, consider the interrelationships of elements within the pro forma forecast (for example, the statement of financial performance and the cash flow statement);
- (aa) perform analytical procedures on the pro forma forecast;
- (bb) evaluate the appropriateness of the period of time covered by the pro forma forecast taking into account that it becomes more speculative as the length of the period covered increase;
- (cc) enquiry of the responsible party on the reasons for the choice of time period;
- (dd) evaluate whether the time period is consistent with the entity's normal reporting period so as to make it comparable, and therefore assists intended users make an informed assessment of the entity's prospects;
- (ee) consider the operating cycle of the entity;
- (ff) the degree of reliability of assumptions given the time period;

¹²⁶—See RG 170

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- ~~(gg) — the needs of the intended users of the pro forma forecast;¹²⁷~~
- ~~(hh) — when any elapsed portion of the current time period is included in the prospective financial information, the extent to which procedures need to be applied to the historical information will vary depending on the circumstances, for example, how much of the prospective time period has elapsed;~~
- ~~(ii) — where there are legal or regulatory requirements and/or other authoritative guidance in respect of an acceptable time period for the pro forma forecast to cover;~~
- ~~(jj) — making clerical checks such as re-computation and reviewing internal consistency; that is, the actions the responsible party intends to take are compatible with each other and there are no inconsistencies in the determination of the amounts that are based on common variables, such as interest rates;~~
- ~~(kk) — assessing the accuracy of any pro forma forecasts prepared in prior time periods as compared to actual financial results, and the reasons provided for significant variances;~~
- ~~(ll) — performing an assessment of whether the preparation of the pro forma forecast is prepared on a reasonable basis, and is not misleading, based on evidence obtained throughout the engagementthe assurance engagement;~~
- ~~(mm) — determining the appropriateness of the recognition and measurement accounting policies used by the responsible party;~~
- ~~(nn) — understanding the processes for selecting and approving the application of such policies;~~
- ~~(oo) — understanding the differences, if any, between the policies adopted in the prospective financial information as compared to the most recent financial report;~~
- ~~(pp) — understanding the differences, if any, between the recognition and measurement accounting policies adopted~~

¹²⁷ — For example, see ASIC's RG 170, paragraph 170.29, for guidance regarding what timeframe ASIC considers is reasonable for the inclusion of prospective financial information.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~compared to those from applicable Australian Accounting Standards (including those which have been, or are proposed to be, supersede by the Australian Accounting Standards Board);~~

- ~~(qq) — considering any change in accounting policy since the most recent financial report is disclosed along with the reason for the change, and its effect on the pro forma forecast;~~
- ~~(rr) — considering the impact of any changes on the underlying recognition and measurement of the pro forma forecast in terms of whether it causes the pro forma forecast to be misleading; and~~
- ~~(ss) — assessing the suitability of the recognition and measurement accounting policies and principles used as applicable criteria for the preparation of the pro forma forecast;~~
- ~~(tt) — evaluating evidence, including the reasonableness of the responsible party's oral and written representations;~~
- ~~(uu) — making enquires of the responsible party, other experts and relevant parties; and~~
- ~~(vv) — where the assurance practitioner identifies matters requiring further investigation, designing and performing further assurance procedures, if required, to reduce assurance engagement risk to an appropriate level.~~
- ~~(ww) — Disclosure of Pro Forma Forecast~~
- ~~(xx) — In addition to the application and other explanatory material in paragraph A22, when designing and performing assurance procedures, the assurance practitioner's procedures on the disclosures of the pro forma forecast in the ordinarily reviews the disclosures related to the pro forma forecast in the document to assesss ordinarily include:~~
- ~~(yy) — Whether appropriate disclosures are made in the document to enable the intended users to assess the assumptions used in the preparation of the pro forma forecast:~~
- ~~(zz) — the validity of the assumptions on which the forecast is based;~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (aaa) — the likelihood of the assumptions actually occurring;
- (bbb) — the effect on the forecast if the assumptions vary;
- (ccc) — where applicable, a clear distinction between best estimate assumptions and hypothetical assumptions;
- (ddd) — material assumptions are adequately disclosed in the document, and are clearly identified as representing the responsible party's best estimate and are based on reasonably objective grounds, and hence are not subject to a high degree of uncertainty;
- (eee) — whether such accounting policies areas were applied in the preparation of the pro forma forecast consistent with the Australian Accounting Standards; and
- (fff) — whether the disclosures contain a clear statement by the responsible party that the pro forma forecast, is by nature predictive, given it is based on assumptions, and the actual results may differ materially.¹²⁸
- (ggg) — Evaluating the Sufficiency and Appropriateness of Evidence Obtained (Ref: Para. Error! Reference source not found.)
- (hhh) — The assurance practitioner ordinarily expresses a limited assurance conclusion in respect of both the pro forma forecast and the assumptions, due to the nature of evidence available. Such evidence is primarily obtained through enquiry and analytical procedures.
- (iii)(e) — While evidence may be available to support the underlying assumptions, such evidence is itself generally future oriented and, therefore, speculative in nature, as distinct from the evidence ordinarily available in the audit or review of historical financial information. Consequently, when reporting on the reasonableness of the responsible party's assumptions, the assurance practitioner ordinarily provides only a limited level of assurance on the assumptions.
- (jjj) — The assurance practitioner is therefore not in a position to conclude as to whether the results shown in the pro forma forecast will be achieved. If it is expressed as a range, the

¹²⁸ — See RG 170, para 170.88.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~assurance practitioner cannot conclude, or provide any assurance that actual results will fall within the range.~~

Proper Compilation of Pro Forma Financial Information

Engagement Acceptance

Preconditions for Acceptance (Ref: Para. 180)

~~A240.~~A128. The assurance practitioner should make it clear to the responsible party that the assurance engagement will not involve the assurance practitioner expressing a conclusion on:

- (a) the pro forma financial information or any financial information used as ~~the its~~ source financial information for the compilation;
- (b) the appropriateness of the stated basis of preparation of the pro forma financial information; or
- (c) whether the pro forma financial information has been prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with the recognition and measurement policies of the entity, or its applicable financial reporting framework.

Agreeing on the Terms of the Assurance Engagement (Ref: Para. 183)

~~A241.~~A129. Ordinarily the assurance practitioner only provides limited assurance on the proper compilation of the pro forma financial information, however there is nothing in this ASAE to preclude the assurance practitioner from using professional judgement in conducting an assurance engagement with a view to expressing a reasonable assurance conclusion on the proper compilation of the pro forma financial information.

Planning the Assurance Engagement

Planning Activities (Ref: Para. 184-185)

~~A242.~~A130. In addition to the application and other explanatory material in paragraph A18, the following planning activities assist the assurance practitioner in the planning process:

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (a) enquiry of the responsible party and other entity personnel involved in the compilation of the pro forma financial information;
- (b) enquiry of other appropriate parties such as those charged with governance and the entity's advisors;
- (c) reading relevant supporting documentation such as contracts or agreements;
- (d) reading minutes of meetings of those charged with governance;
- (e) understanding the purpose of the assurance report;
- (f) understanding, and the nature of the entities involved in the proper compilation process, including an knowledge and experience of the industry in which each entity operates and their respective environments, if the assurance practitioner has not previously audited or review the financial information of the entity, or any acquiree or divestee;
- (g) understanding application law and regulation that may affect the document in which the pro forma financial information is included;
- ~~(a)(h)~~ understanding of the financial reporting frameworks used in the preparation of the source of the base financial information and, if applicable, of the acquiree's financial information;
 - ~~(i)~~ The assurance practitioner may have all or part of the required understanding of the entity and any acquiree or divestee, and their respective environments, if the assurance practitioner has previously audited or reviewed their financial information.
- ~~(b)~~ understanding the nature of the event(s) or transaction(s) giving rise to the compilation of pro forma financial information including whether their nature is an;
- ~~(c)~~ acquisition, divestment or business combination;
- ~~(d)~~ divestment; or

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~(e)~~(i) ~~business combination;~~

~~(f)~~(j) understanding the nature of the source of the base financial information, including whether it:

- (i) is sourced from more than one entity's financial information, for example:
 - ◇ an acquiree may be an incorporated entity or a separately identifiable unincorporated operation within another entity such as a division, branch or line of business; or
 - ◇ a divestee may be an incorporated entity such as a subsidiary or joint venture, or a separately identifiable unincorporated operation within the entity such as a division, branch or line of business; and
- (ii) includes one or more single financial statements, such as a statement of financial position and a statement of comprehensive income; or
- (iii) is summarised financial information from a financial report, for example, a statement of net assets;

~~(g)~~(k) ~~obtaining an~~ ~~obtain an~~ understanding ~~of~~ the compilation process of the pro forma financial information, which ordinarily includes:

(i) identifying the source of the base financial information to be used in the compilation, and from which the base financial information is to be extracted;

~~(i)~~(ii) ~~identifying and the steps taken to~~ extracting the base financial information from that source;

~~(ii)~~(iii) understanding how the responsible party has developed the applicable criteria, for example, based on practices in a particular industry, and whether it is appropriate and transparent;

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~(iii)~~(iv) identifying the appropriate pro forma adjustments, including, for example:

- ◇ how the responsible party has obtained the acquiree's financial information in compiling the pro forma financial information;
- ◇ understanding the responsible party's approach how and criteria for allocating key financial line items approach, such as income, overheads, and assets and liabilities are allocated among, or between, the entity and any acquirees;

~~(iv)~~(v) making pro forma adjustments to the unadjusted base financial information for the purpose for which the pro forma financial information is presented; and

~~(v)~~ presenting the resulting pro forma financial information with accompanying disclosures, typically in columnar format consisting of (a) the base (unadjusted) financial information; (b) the pro forma adjustments; and (c) the resulting pro forma financial information;

~~(h)~~(1) assessing the responsible party's competence in compiling pro forma financial information, including the nature and extent of oversight by the responsible party of other entity personnel involved in the compilation of the pro forma financial information; and

understanding the responsible party's approach to identifying appropriate disclosures to support the pro forma financial information.

A131. The assurance practitioner may have all or part of the required understanding of the entity and any acquiree or divestee, and their respective environments, if the assurance practitioner has audited or reviewed their financial information.

A132. Relevant industry factors include industry conditions such as the competitive environment, supplier and customer relationships, and

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

technological developments. Examples of matters the assurance practitioner may consider include:

- (a) The market and competition, including demand, capacity, and price competition.
- (b) Common business practices within the industry.
- (c) Cyclical or seasonal activity.
- (d) Product technology relating to the entity's products.

A133. Relevant legal and regulatory factors include the legal and regulatory environment, which encompasses, among other matters, the applicable financial reporting framework in accordance with which the entity or, if applicable, the acquiree prepares its periodic financial information, and the legal and political environment. Examples of matters the assurance practitioner may consider include:

- (a) Industry-specific accounting practices.
- (b) Legal and regulatory framework for a regulated industry.
- (c) Legislation and regulation that significantly affect the entity's or, if applicable, the acquiree has or divestee's operations, including direct supervisory activities.
- (d) Taxation.
- (e) Government policies currently affecting the conduct of the entity's or, if applicable, the acquiree's or divestee's business, such as monetary policies (including foreign exchange controls), fiscal policies, financial incentives (for example, government aid programs, and tariffs or trade restrictions policies.

~~A243:~~A134. Examples of other external factors affecting the entity and, if applicable, the acquiree or divestee that the assurance practitioner may consider include the general economic conditions, interest rates and availability of financing, and inflation or currency revaluation.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Prior History of Audit or Review (Ref: Para. 184)

A135. Applicable law or regulation ordinarily requires the entity to have prior historical financial information audited or reviewed, even if it does not require the source of the unadjusted base financial information itself to have been audited or reviewed for the purposes of compiling the pro forma financial information. Ordinarily, there is an insufficient basis for the assurance practitioner to undertake the engagementthe assurance engagement if the prior historical financial information of the entity, or, if the event or transaction involves an acquisition, that of the acquiree, has never been subject to an audit or review.

Materiality Considerations (Ref: Para. 185)

A244.A136. Materiality with regard to the proper compilation of the pro forma financial information does not depend on a single quantitative measure. Instead, it depends on the size and nature of the omission or inappropriate application of an element of the compilation, whether or not intentional. Judgement about these aspects of size and nature will, in turn, depend on such matters as:

- (a) the context of the underlying event(s) or transaction(s);
- (b) the purpose for which the pro forma financial information is being compiled; and
- (c) the related engagement circumstances.

The determining factor could be the size or the nature of the matter, or a combination of both.

Performing the Engagementthe assurance engagement

Assurance Procedures

Audit or Review of the Source of the Base Financial Information
(Ref: Para. **A138(a)**)

A245. If an audit or review report on the source of the base financial information has been issued by another assurance practitioner, the assurance practitioner, the need by the assurance practitioner reporting under this ASAE for an understanding of the entity and its accounting and financial reporting practices is not diminished. In the circumstances, the assurance practitioner may need to consider

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~whether the assurance practitioner can acquire sufficient knowledge of these matters to perform the procedures necessary to report under this ASAE.~~

A137. ~~considers~~ ~~Considering~~ ~~the nature of the audit opinion or review conclusion on the findings of the audit or review of the source of the~~ ~~base financial information,~~ as not all modified audit opinions, review conclusions or Emphasis of Matter paragraphs with respect to either the source of the ~~unadjusted base~~ financial information or the source of the acquiree or divestee financial information may necessarily affect the proper compilation of the pro forma financial information. For example, a qualified audit opinion may have been expressed on the entity's financial statements because of the non-disclosure of remuneration for those charged with governance as required by the applicable financial reporting framework. If this is the case and these financial statements are used as the source of the ~~unadjusted base~~ financial information, such qualification may have no consequence on the proper compilation of pro forma net asset and income statements.

~~A246.~~A138. ~~If another assurance practitioner has issued an audit or review report on the source, the need by the assurance practitioner reporting under this ASAE for an understanding of the entity and its accounting and financial reporting practices is not diminished. In the circumstances, the assurance practitioner may need to consider whether the assurance practitioner can acquire sufficient knowledge of these matters to perform the procedures necessary to report under this ASAE.~~

~~A247.~~A139. ~~Where there is no audit or review report on the source, of the base financial information,~~ it is necessary for the assurance practitioner to perform procedures in relation to the appropriateness of that source. Factors that may affect the nature and extent of these procedures include, for example:

- (a) Whether the assurance practitioner has ~~knowledge of the entity, obtained from~~ previously audited or reviewed of the entity's historical financial information, ~~and the assurance practitioner's knowledge of the entity from such engagement.~~
- (b) Whether the entity's financial information is subject to periodic review by the assurance practitioner, for example, for purposes of meeting applicable law or regulatory ~~filing~~ requirements.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Source of the Base Financial Information (Ref: Para. 1(a))

A140. The assurance practitioner is required to determine the appropriateness of the base financial information. Factors that may affect the appropriateness of the source include whether there is an audit or review report on the source, and whether the source:

- (a) Is permitted by applicable law or regulation to be included in the document.

~~Procedures ordinarily include performing an assessment of factors that may affect the appropriateness of the source of the base financial information is appropriate. Such factors may include that the base financial information:~~

- ~~(e)(b) Is clearly identifiable.~~

- ~~(e)(c) Represents a reasonable starting point for compiling the pro forma financial information in the context of the event(s) or transaction(s), including whether it is at an appropriate date or covers an appropriate period.~~

- ~~(e)(d) Is consistent with Represents market custom and practice with regard to information used as use that type of base financial information.~~

A141. Where the ~~unadjusted~~ source of the base financial information ~~pre~~ ~~forma financial information~~ has not been subject to an audit or review, the assurance practitioner, having regard to the factors in paragraph A142, performs the following procedures to determine the appropriateness of the source of the ~~unadjusted~~ base financial information:

- (a) Enquiring of the responsible party about:

- (i) The process by which the source of the base financial information has been prepared, and the reliability of the underlying accounting records to which ~~the source~~ it is agreed or reconciled. ~~Has been agreed or reconciled to reliable underlying accounting records.~~
- (ii) Whether all ~~Includes all recorded~~ transactions have been recorded.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (iii) Whether the source Hhas been prepared in accordance with the entity's ~~recognition and measurement~~ accounting policies.
- ~~(iv)~~ Reflects ~~Whether there have been~~ any changes in accounting policies from the most recent audited or reviewed period and, if so, how such changes have been dealt with.
- ~~(v)~~ Considering ~~the responsible party's assessment of the risk that the source of the base financial information may be materially misstated as a result of fraud.~~
- ~~(iv)~~ Considering the ~~The effect of changes in the entity's business activities and operations.~~
- ~~(v)~~
- (vi) ~~Represents market custom and practice to use that type of financial information.~~
- ~~(f)~~(b) Considering the findings of the audit or review of the immediately preceding annual or interim financial information and ,if applicable, the corresponding prior period financial information and:
- (i) D~~iscussing~~ing any significant changes with the responsible party.
- (ii) E~~valuating~~e whether these might indicate any issues with the preparation of the source of the base financial information.
- ~~(g)~~ Performing procedures to corroborate some or all the information provided by the responsible party in response to the assurance practitioners enquiries, such as when the responses appear inconsistent with the assurance practitioner's understanding o he entity or the engagementthe assurance engagement circumstances.
- ~~(h)~~(c) ~~The responsible party's assessment of the risk that the source of the base financial information may be materially misstated as a result of fraud.~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~A248-A142.~~ As the assurance practitioner is not reporting on the source of the base financial information, there is no requirement for the assurance practitioner to perform procedures to identify events after the date of the ~~source-base financial information~~ that require adjustment of, or disclosure in, such source. Nevertheless, it is necessary for the assurance practitioner to consider whether any significant events subsequent to the date of the source of the ~~unadjusted-base~~ financial information have come to the assurance practitioner's attention that may require reference to, or disclosure in, the explanatory notes to the pro forma financial information to avoid the latter being ~~misleading/misstated~~. Such consideration is based on performing the procedures under this ASAE or the assurance practitioner's knowledge of the entity and ~~the engagement~~~~the assurance engagement~~ circumstances. For example, after the date of the source of the ~~unadjusted-base~~ financial information, the entity may have entered into a capital transaction involving the conversion of its convertible debt into equity, non-disclosure of which could result in the pro forma financial information being ~~misleading/misstated~~.

Pro Forma Adjustments (Ref: Para. 186(c))

~~A249-A143.~~ The assurance practitioner obtains evidence regarding whether the responsible party has appropriately identified the necessary pro forma adjustments, in accordance with the applicable criteria used in compiling the pro forma financial information, through Pro Forma adjustments need to reflect the applicable criteria used by the responsible party in formatting the basis stated, and the assurance practitioner ordinarily performs the following procedures:

- (a) Evaluating the reasonableness of the responsible party's approach to identifying the appropriate pro forma adjustments, for example, the method used in identifying appropriate allocations of income, overheads, assets and liabilities among the relevant businesses.
- (b) Enquiring of relevant parties within an acquiree regarding their approach to extracting the acquiree financial information.
- (c) Evaluating specific aspects of the relevant contracts, agreements or other documents.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- ~~(a)~~(d) Inquiring of the entity's advisors regarding specific aspects of the event or transaction and related contracts and agreements that are relevant to the identification of appropriate adjustments.
- (e) Evaluating relevant analysis and worksheets prepared by the responsible party and other entity personnel involved in the compilation of the pro forma financial information.
- (f) Obtaining evidence of the responsible party's oversight of other entity personnel involved in the compilation of the pro forma financial information.
- (g) Analytical procedures.
- ~~(b)~~ Evaluating the reasonableness of the responsible party's approach to identifying the appropriate pro forma adjustments, for example, the method used in identifying appropriate allocations of income, overheads, assets and liabilities among the relevant businesses.
- ~~(e)~~(h) Assessment ~~Assessing~~ of whether the pro forma adjustments are directly attributable to the event(s) or transaction(s), so as to ensure the to avoid the pro forma financial information reflects only those ~~ing~~ matters that ~~do~~ not arise solely as a result of the event, and or that are not ~~an~~ an integral part of the transaction(s). Directly attributable adjustments exclude those that relate to future events or are dependent on actions to be taken once the transaction has been completed, even if such actions are key to the entity entering into the transaction (for example ~~the~~ closing of redundant production sites after an acquisition).
- (i) Ensuring all pro forma adjustments are consistent with the entity's applicable financial reporting framework and its accounting policies under that framework.
- ~~(d)~~(j) Ensuring the pro forma adjustments are ~~F~~factually supportable in order to provide a reliable basis for the pro forma financial information. While the nature of the supporting facts will vary with the circumstances, they are nevertheless capable of objective determination. Sources of factual support for the pro forma adjustments include, for example:

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (i) Purchase and sale agreements.
- (ii) Financing documents for the event or transaction, such as debt agreements.
- (iii) Independent valuation reports.
- (iv) Other documents relating to the event or transaction.
- (v) Published financial statements.
- (vi) Other financial information disclosed in the document.
- (vii) Relevant legal or regulatory actions, such as in the area of taxation.
- (viii) Employment agreements.
- (ix) Actions of those charged with governance; and-

(e)(k) Ensuring that the explanatory notes accompanying the pro forma financial information disclose the responsible party's approach and criteria for any allocations of income, overheads, and assets of liabilities in a business combination or divestment.

A250.A144. Pro forma adjustments that result from Factual support for any acquiree or divestee financial information also requires factual support for their inclusion. Applicable law or regulation may require the source of the acquiree's base financial information be audited or reviewed for purposes of the document in which the pro forma financial information appears. In such circumstances, the acquiree financial information will be factually supportable. Where the acquiree's source base financial information has not been audited or reviewed, the practitioner may perform the following procedures in order to access if the acquiree financial information is factually supportable: included in the pro forma adjustments:

- (a) Consider if the acquires financial information used as one of the sources of the base financial information has been audited or reviewed for the purposes of the document and consider findings:

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (i) ~~in such circumstances, the acquiree financial information will be factually supportable; or~~
 - (ii) ~~if the base financial information has not been audited or reviewed, additional procedures may need to be performed, for example:~~
- ~~(b)~~(a) Inquiring of the acquiree's management about:
- (i) ~~The process by which the source of the base financial information has been prepared and the reliability of the underlying accounting records to which the source is agreed or reconciled;~~
 - (ii) ~~Whether all transactions have been recorded;~~
 - (iii) ~~Whether the source of the base financial information has been prepared in accordance with the acquiree's accounting policies;~~
 - (iv) ~~Whether there have been any changes in accounting policies from the most recent audited or reviewed period and, if so, how such changes have been dealt with;~~
 - (v) ~~The assessment of the risk by the acquiree's management that the source of the base financial information may be materially misstated as a result of fraud;~~
 - (vi) ~~The effect of changes in the acquiree's business activities and operations;~~
- (b) ~~considering the findings of the audit or review of the immediately preceding annual or interim financial information and whether these might indicate any issues with the preparation of the source of the base financial information;~~
- (c) ~~performing procedures to corroborate some or all the information provided by the acquiree's management in response to the assurance practitioner's enquiries such as when the responses appear inconsistent with the assurance practitioner's understanding of the acquiree or the engagementthe assurance engagement circumstances;~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (d) comparing the source of the base financial information with the corresponding prior period financial information and, as applicable, the immediately preceding annual or interim financial information, and discussing significant changes with the acquiree's management;
- (e) an evaluation of whether any differences exist between the acquiree's accounting policies and those of the entity;
- (f) whether accounting policies for transactions undertaken by the acquiree which the entity has not previously entered into are policies that the entity would have adopted for such transactions under its applicable financial reporting framework, taking into account the entity's particular circumstances; and
- (e)(g) ~~a~~ n evaluation of whether the ~~related~~ pro forma adjustments give appropriate effect to ~~that the transactions~~ or events to which they relate ~~identified basis~~.

A145. A consideration of the appropriateness of the entity's accounting policies may also be necessary in some circumstances. For example, as part of the event or transaction, the entity may propose to issue complex financial instruments of the first time. If this is the case, it may be necessary to consider:

- (a) whether the responsible party has adopted appropriate accounting policies to account for such financial instruments under its applicable financial reporting framework; and
- (b) whether it has appropriate applied such policies in the compilation of the pro forma financial information.

Basis Stated (Ref: Para. 1(a))

~~A251~~-A146. Obtain evidence whether the responsible party has an appropriate basis for presenting the significant effects directly attributable to the underlying event(s) or transaction(s):

- (a) ~~Performing procedures to corroborate some or all the information provided by the acquiree's management in response to the assurance practitioner's enquiries, such as when the responses appear inconsistent with the assurance~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~practitioner's understanding of the acquiree or the engagement circumstances.~~

- ~~(b)~~(a) Consistent with the entity's applicable financial reporting framework and its recognition and measurement accounting policies under that framework. In the context of a business combination, for example, the proper compilation of the pro forma financial information should involve consideration of such matters as:
- (i) whether differences exist between the acquiree's accounting policies and those of the entity; and
 - (ii) whether accounting policies for transactions undertaken by the ~~acquiree which the entity has not previously entered into~~ acquiree, which the entity has not previously entered into, are policies that the entity would have adopted for such transactions under its applicable financial reporting framework, taking into account the entity's particular circumstances.
- ~~(e)~~(b) By Reviewing any accompanying explanatory notes prepared by the responsible party to describe how the applicable criteria have been applied in illustrating the effects of the particular event(s) or transaction(s). Such notes may include, for example, the date or period for which the pro forma financial information is being presented.
- ~~(d)~~(c) A consideration of the appropriateness of the entity's recognition and measurement accounting policies may also be necessary in some circumstances. For example, as part of the event or transaction, the entity may propose to issue complex financial instruments for the first time. If this is the case, it may be necessary to consider:
- (i) whether the responsible party has adopted appropriate recognition and measurement accounting policies to account for such financial instruments under its applicable financial reporting framework; and

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- (ii) whether it has appropriately applied such policies in the compilation of the pro forma financial information.

Pro Forma Financial Information (Ref: Para. 186(f))

~~A252-A147.~~ The assurance practitioner obtains ~~Obtain~~ evidence whether the responsible party has prepared and presented the pro forma financial information on the basis stated, and in accordance with applicable law or regulation:

- (a) Appropriate disclosures accompanying the pro forma financial information have been made including ~~of the~~:
 - (i) ~~the~~ nature and purpose of the pro forma financial information, including the nature of the event or transaction, and the date as of, or the period for, which the responsible party has compiled the pro forma financial information;
 - (ii) ~~the~~ source of the ~~unadjusted base~~ financial information, and whether or not an audit or review report on ~~it such a source~~ has been published;
 - (iii) ~~The~~ pro forma adjustments, including a description and explanation of each adjustment. This includes, in the case of acquiree or divestee financial information, the source of such information and whether or not an audit or review report on such a source has been published; and
 - (iv) if not publicly available, a description of the applicable criteria in accordance with which the compilation of the pro forma financial information has been performed.;
- (b) A statement to the effect that the pro forma financial information has been compiled for illustrative purposes only and that, because of its nature, it does not represent the entity's actual financial position, financial performance, or cash flows.
- (c) Different presentations of pro forma financial information may be included in the document depending on the nature of the event(s) or transaction(s) and how the responsible

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

party intends to illustrate the impact of such event or transaction on the base financial information of the entity.

- (i) For example, the entity may acquire a number of businesses prior to an initial public offering. In such circumstances, the responsible party may choose to present a pro forma net asset statement to illustrate the impact of the acquisitions on the entity's financial position and key ratios such as debt to equity as if the acquired businesses had been combined with the entity at an earlier date.
- (ii) The responsible party may also choose to present a pro forma income statement to illustrate what the results of operations might have been for the period ended on that date. In such cases, the nature of the pro forma financial information may be described by titles such as "Statement of Pro Forma Net Assets as at 30 June 20X1" and "Pro Forma Income Statement for the Year Ended 30 June 20X1".

A148. Not all modified audit opinions, review conclusions or emphasis of matter paragraphs with respect to either the source of the ~~unadjusted~~ base financial information or the source of the acquiree or divestee financial information may necessarily affect the proper compilation of the pro forma financial information. For example, a qualified audit opinion may have been expressed on the entity's financial statements because of the non-disclosure of remuneration for those charged with governance as required by the applicable financial reporting framework. If this is the case, and these financial statements are used as the source of the ~~base~~ ~~unadjusted~~ financial information, such a qualification may have no consequence on the proper compilation of pro forma net assets and income statements. However, if the assurance practitioner considers they need to take further action, based on the nature of the modified opinion, the assurance practitioner needs to consider applicable law or regulation before: (Ref: Para. 187)

- (a) considering a modification to the assurance conclusion on the basis of the modification to the source of the ~~base~~ ~~unadjusted~~ financial information;
- (b) referencing or referring to the other assurance practitioner's report in the assurance report, where, in the assurance

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

practitioner's professional judgement, the matter is of sufficient relevance and important to users' understanding of the pro forma financial information;

(c) seeking legal advice; or

(d) withdrawing from ~~the engagement~~the assurance engagement;

Adjustments Identified by the Assurance Practitioner (Ref: Para. 188)

~~A253:~~A149. The pro forma financial information may not be considered properly compiled when there is evidence of, for example:

- (a) Use of an inappropriate source for the ~~base~~unadjusted financial information.
- (b) Incorrect extraction of the ~~unadjusted-base~~ financial information from an appropriate source.
- (c) In relation to adjustments, the misapplication of accounting policies, or the failure of the adjustments, to be consistent with the entity's accounting policies.
- (d) Failure to make an adjustment required by the applicable criteria.
- (e) Making an adjustment that is not in accordance with the applicable criteria.
- (f) A mathematical or clerical mistake in the calculations within the pro forma financial information.
- (g) Inadequate, incorrect or omitted disclosures.

Evaluating the Sufficiency and Appropriateness of Evidence Obtained (Ref: Para. 189)

~~A254:~~A150. Where it is not practicable for the assurance practitioner to obtain evidence to conclude that the pro forma financial information of an acquiree, or the entity is factually supportable, the assurance practitioner may need to discuss the matter with the entity's

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

responsible party and consider the implications for the assurance practitioner's report.

Written Representations (Ref: Para. 190)

~~A255:A151.~~ In some circumstances, the types of transactions involved may require the responsible party to use accounting policies for the pro forma adjustments that the entity has not previously applied as it had no comparable transactions. In such a case, the assurance practitioner may request the responsible party to expand the written representations to include confirmation that such accounting policies constitute the entity's adopted policies for such types of transactions.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Conformity with Australian-International Standards on

This ~~Auditing~~ Standard on Assurance Engagements has been made for Australian legislative purposes and accordingly there is no equivalent Australian-International Standard on Assurance Engagements (ISAE) issued by the ~~Australian Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (AUASB)~~ International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (IAASB), an independent standard-setting board of the Australian-International Federation of Accountants (IFAC).

This Standard complies with ISAE 3420 *Assurance Reports on the Proper Compilation of Pro Forma Financial Information Included in a Prospectus*

Compliance with this Standard on Assurance Engagements does not affect compliance with the ISAEs.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Appendix 1

TYPES OF FINANCIAL INFORMATION INCLUDED IN
A PUBLIC DOCUMENT

	Historical	Pro Forma Historical	Prospective- (+)	
	Historical	Pro Forma Historical	Prospective ⁽¹⁾	
Type of Conclusion Type of Conclusion			Pro Forma Forecast Forecast	Combination of reasonably objectivebest- estimate & immaterial hypothetical assumptions
Limited assurance	✓	✓	✓	✓ ⁽²⁾
Reasonable assurance	✓	✗	✗	✗

Notes:

- (1) For assurance engagements involving prospective financial information that are conducted in accordance with the *Corporations Act 2001*, the assurance practitioner needs to consider whether the basis of the information includes the use of material hypothetical assumptions¹²⁹. In such cases, the financial information is considered to be without reasonable grounds and is therefore not permitted to be disclosed in public documents.

¹²⁹ Refer RG 170.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~(2) — Prospective financial information that is proposed to be included in a public document must have reasonable grounds for its inclusion.~~¹³⁰

¹³⁰ Refer RG 170.

Appendix 2

(Ref: Para. A14)

ILLUSTRATION OF AN ENGAGEMENT LETTER

The following illustrative letter is not authoritative, but is intended as a guide that may be used in conjunction with considerations outlined in this ASAE. It will need to be varied according to individual requirement and circumstances. It may be appropriate to seek legal advice that any proposed letter is suitable.

Engagement Circumstances include the following:

- **ABC Company proposes a takeover of XYZ Target company, ~~but does not have access to the Target's financial information.~~**
- **~~Investigating Accountant's Report~~ Independent Assurance Report undertaken under the Corporations Act 2001.**
- _____
- **Limited assurance conclusion.**

Introduction

This letter confirms our understanding of the terms of engagement requiring our services as Investigating Accountant in respect of the historical financial information, pro forma historical and forecast financial information to be included in the proposed bidder statement of ABC Company Limited ("ABC Company") to be issued in connection with [describe here the proposed transaction; for example, ~~it~~ the proposed acquisition of XYZ Target Limited ("Target")]. The purpose of this letter is to outline the role and approach of [firm name] and the reports we will deliver.

Scope of our work

A. *Overview*

Our firm will:

- perform procedures, described below, to enable us to report on the ABC Company's historical balance sheet as at 30 June 20X1, income statements for the years ended 30 June 20XX and 20X1, and

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

statements of cash flows for the years ended 30 June 20XX and 20X1 (the “Historical Financial Information”);

- perform procedures, described below, to enable us to report on the proper compilation of the aggregation of ABC Company’s pro forma historical balance sheet, shown with adjustments for the effect of transactions as at 30 June 20XX, pro forma historical income statements for the years ended 30 June 20XX and 20X1 and pro forma historical statements of cash flows for the years ended 30 June 20XX and 20X1 (the “Pro Forma Historical Financial Information”);
- perform procedures, described below, to enable us to report on the ABC Company’s forecast income statement for the year ending 30 June 20XX (“the ABC Company Forecast”); and
- perform procedures, described below, to enable us to report on the aggregation proper compilation of ABC Company’s forecast income statement for the combined ABC Company/XYZ Target group for the year ending 30 June 20XX (“the Aggregated Forecast”).

We will conduct our engagement in accordance with ASAE 34XX Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and Prospective Financial Information ~~Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or Prospective Financial Information~~.

B. Review of Historical Financial Information

We will review the Historical Financial Information of ABC Company, comprising the Statements of Financial Position as at 30 June 20X1, Statements of Financial Performance and Statements of Cash Flows for the years ended 30 June 20XX and 20X1, in order to state whether, on the basis of the procedures described, anything has come to our attention that would cause us to believe that the Historical Financial Information is not prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with the recognition and measurement principles prescribed in Australian Accounting Standards, and the accounting policies adopted by ABC Company and disclosed in the proposed bidder statement (the “applicable criteria”).

The review procedures will be limited primarily to include, but not limited to:

- analytical procedures on the ~~audited/~~unaudited Statements of Financial Position of ABC Company as at 30 June 20X1 and Statements of Financial Performance and Statements of Cash Flows of ABC Company for the years ended 30 June 20XX and 20X1;

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- a comparison of consistency in the application of recognition and measurement principles in Australian Accounting Standards, and the accounting policies adopted by ABC Company (and disclosed in the proposed bidder statement) in the preparation of
- the ~~h~~Historical ~~f~~Financial ~~I~~Information; ~~and disclosed in the proposed bidder statement;~~
- a review of ABC Company's work papers, accounting records and other documents; and
- enquiry of directors, management, and others in relation to the Historical Financial Information.

~~The above~~Our review procedures will not provide all the evidence that would be required in an audit, thus the level of assurance provided will be less than given in an audit. ~~Our review is not an audit. We will not perform an audit~~ and, accordingly, we will not express an audit opinion.

C. *Review of the ~~Aggregation~~ Proper Compilation of Pro Forma Historical Financial Information*

We will review the ~~aggregation~~ proper compilation of Pro Forma Historical Financial Information of ABC Company in order to state whether, on the basis of the procedures described, anything ~~has~~ comes to our attention that would cause us to believe that the Pro Forma Historical Financial Information is not properly compiled, in all material respects, on the stated basis of:

- (a) the Historical Financial Information of ABC Company extracted from the audited financial statements of ABC Company for the years ended 30 June 20XX and 20X1;
- (b) historical financial information of XYZ Target extracted from the audited financial statements of XYZ Target for the years ended 30 June 20XX and 20X1; and
- (c) the pro forma ~~transactions and/or~~ adjustments described in section [X] of the Bidder Statement.

~~The review procedures will include, but not limited to~~ The review procedures will be limited primarily to:

- consideration of work papers, accounting records and other documents, including those dealing with the extraction of Historical

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Financial Information of ABC Company from its audited financial statements for the years ended 30 June 20XX and 20X1, and those dealing with the extraction of historical financial information of XYZ Target from its audited financial statements for the years ended 30 June 20XX and 20X1;

- consideration of the pro forma ~~transactions and/or~~ adjustments described in section [X] of the Bidder Statement;
- enquiry of directors, management, personnel and advisors;
- the performance of analytical procedures applied to the pro forma financial ~~data~~information;
- a review of work papers, accounting records and other documents of ABC Company and its auditors (where the assurance practitioner is not the auditor);
- a review of accounting policies for consistency of application and identification of any adjustments to align the accounting ~~policies~~ policies of XYZ to those of the Company.

The procedures will not provide all the evidence that would be required in an audit, thus, the level of assurance provided will be less than given in an audit. ~~We will not perform~~Our review is not ~~or~~an audit and, accordingly, we will not express an audit opinion.

We will not have sufficient access to [XYZ Target] to be able to audit or review the historical financial information extracted from the financial statements of XYZ Target for the years ended 30 June 20XX and 20X1, and accordingly, we will not express any opinion, ~~or make any statement of negative assurance~~, as to whether the Pro Forma Historical Financial Information is prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with the recognition and measurement principles prescribed in Australian Accounting Standards, and accounting policies adopted by ABC Company disclosed in section [X] of the Bidder Statement (the “applicable criteria”).

D. Review of ~~ABC Company's~~ Forecast

We will review the ~~ABC Company~~ Forecast and the directors’ best-estimate assumptions underlying the ~~ABC Company~~ Forecast in order to state whether, on the basis of the procedures described, anything has come to our attention that causes us to believe, in all material respects that:

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- the directors' best-estimate assumptions, when taken as a whole, do not provide ~~objectively~~-reasonable grounds for the preparation of the ~~ABC Company~~-Forecast;
- the ~~ABC Company~~-Forecast is not properly prepared on the basis of the directors' best-estimate assumptions or prepared in accordance with the recognition and measurement principles prescribed in Australian Accounting Standards and accounting policies adopted by ABC Company and disclosed in the proposed bidder statement (the "applicable criteria"); and
- The ~~ABC Company~~-Forecast itself is not ~~un~~reasonable.
- ~~The review procedures will include, but not limited to The review procedures will be limited primarily to~~ enquiry, comparison, and other such analytical review procedures we consider necessary.
- Our review of the ~~ABC Company~~ Forecast ~~Financial Information of ABC Company~~-will be limited primarily to:
 - comparison and analytical review procedures;
 - discussions with management and Directors of ABC Company of the factors considered in determining their assumptions; and
 - examination, on a test basis, of evidence supporting the assumptions ~~and~~; amounts ~~and other disclosures~~ in the ~~ABC Company~~ Forecast ~~Financial Information~~ and the evaluation of ~~a~~Accounting ~~p~~Policies used in the ~~ABC Company~~ Forecast ~~Financial Information~~.

We will require written representations and confirmations from the Directors and management to be provided to ensure the assumptions applied in the preparation of the Forecast ~~Financial Information~~ are consistent with the Directors' knowledge and expectation.

Our review of the ~~ABC Company~~-Forecast will be substantially less in scope than an audit examination conducted in accordance with Australian Auditing Standards. A review of this nature provides less assurance than an audit. ~~We will not perform an audit and we will not express an audit opinion on the ABC Company ABC Company~~-Forecast or the directors' best-estimate assumptions. Our Firm will not express any opinion as to whether any forecast or projections will be achieved, or warrant or guarantee any statements as to the future prospects of ABC Company.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

E. Review of ~~Compiled~~ the Proper Compilation of the Aggregated Forecast

We will review the ~~proper compilation~~ aggregation of the Aggregated Forecast, ~~representing the~~ of the combined ABC Company and XYZ Target in order to state whether, on the basis of the procedures described, anything has come to our attention that causes us to believe that the Aggregated Forecast is not proper compiled on the basis of:

- the ABC Company ~~ABC Company~~ Forecast;
- [publicly] available forecast information of XYZ Target; and
- the directors' assumptions underlying the Aggregated Forecast.

~~Our review procedures will include, but not limited to~~ The review procedures will be limited primarily to enquiry, comparison, and other such analytical review procedures we consider necessary.

Our review of the ~~aggregation~~ proper compilation of the Aggregated Forecast will be substantially less in scope than an audit examination conducted in accordance with Australian Auditing Standards. A review of this nature provides less assurance than an audit. ~~We will not perform an~~ Our review is not an ~~audit~~ and we will not express an audit opinion on the ~~aggregation~~ compilation of the Aggregated Forecast. We will not express any opinion, or make any statement of negative assurance, in relation to the publicly available forecast information of XYZ Target or the directors' assumptions underlying the Aggregated Forecast, and we will make this clear in our Investigating Accountant's Report Independent Assurance Report.¹³¹

Reporting

As a result of the above work procedures we intend to issue the Investigating Accountant's Report Independent Assurance Report to the directors of ABC Company on the Historical Financial Information, the proper compilation of the aggregated ~~ed~~ Pro Forma Historical Financial Information ~~on~~ and the ABC Company ~~ABC Company~~ Forecast, ~~being the~~ and the compiled Aggregated Forecast for inclusion in the proposed bidder statement.

Our Investigating Accountant's Report Independent Assurance Report is to be provided expressly for the benefit of ABC Company, and for inclusion in the bidder statement.

¹³¹ If sufficient access is granted to the XYZ Target's forecast and assumptions underlying the forecast, the wording can be amended.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Reliance on information

The directors of ABC Company are responsible for:

- the content of the proposed bidder statement, other than the content of our ~~Investigating Accountant's Report~~Independent Assurance Report, and any other experts' reports;
- issuing the proposed bidder statement;
- the preparation and presentation of the Historical Financial Information, the Pro Forma Historical Financial Information, the ABC ~~Company~~Forecast and the Aggregated Forecast included in the proposed bidder statement;
- the directors' best-estimate assumptions on which the ~~ABC Company~~ABC Company Forecast is based;
- the directors' assumptions on which the Aggregated Forecast is based; and
- the inclusion in the proposed bidder statement of information regarding the sensitivity of the ~~ABC Company~~ABC Company Forecast and the Aggregated Forecast to changes in key assumptions.

We do not assume any liability for information or statements included in the bidder statement other than our ~~Investigating Accountant's Report~~Independent Assurance Report.

We will require written representation from ABC Company that all material information relevant to the Historical Financial Information, Pro Forma Historical Financial Information, ~~ABC Company~~ABC Company Forecast and Aggregated Forecast within your possession has been provided prior to the finalisation of our reports, and that no material changes have occurred between the date of our reports and the date of lodgement of the proposed bidder statement with the Australian Securities and Investments Commission ("ASIC") which could affect our findings.

Consents

Prior to the issue of the proposed bidder statement, we will review the document in its entirety, to consider whether we consent to the form and context in which we are named as Investigating Accountant, and to consider whether we consent to the inclusion of our ~~Investigating Accountant's Report~~Independent Assurance Report in the form and context in which it is

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

included. Our consent will be issued on the letterhead of [firm name] and should then be quoted in the proposed bidder statement.

The consent relates to the use of our name and report in the context of the whole proposed bidder statement. Our name or report, or any extract, may not be included in any analysts' briefings, in any display on an internet site or in any other media without our prior consent. [Firm name] will be giving the consent pursuant to section 636(3) of the *Corporations Act 2001* but will not otherwise be authorising or causing the issue of the bidder statement.

In the event of any misuse of our name or our reports, [firm name] reserves the right to withdraw its consent by written notification to ABC Company at its registered office and to ASIC.

[insert other information such as fee arrangements, billings and other specific terms and conditions, as appropriate.]

Acceptance of Engagement Terms

We look forward to working closely with the directors of ABC Company in relation to this important assignment.

Please sign and return the attached copy of this engagement letter to indicate your acknowledgement of, and agreement with the terms and conditions detailed in this engagement letter, including our respective responsibilities. If you wish to discuss any aspect of this letter, please do not hesitate to contact me.

Yours Faithfully

[Firm name]

[Name of partner]

Partner

Client Acceptance

I have read and understood the terms and conditions of this letter and the attached Appendix 1 and I agree to and accept them for and on behalf of ABC Company, by whom I am duly authorised:

Signature

Name

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Position

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Appendix 3

(Ref: Para. A20(i))

Materiality Considerations

The following quantitative and qualitative materiality factors may be useful in determining the appropriate materiality level for an assurance engagement on a corporate fundraising.

Quantitative Factors

The assurance practitioner ordinarily uses benchmark(s) appropriate in the entity's circumstances for a quantitative evaluation of the financial information. The benchmark(s) may relate to the total financial information (for example, a statement of financial position), or to certain elements, accounts or transactions included in the financial information (for example, total revenues from sale of the entity's major product). Some factors that the assurance practitioner may consider in determining the appropriate benchmark include:

- The elements of the financial information included in the public document (for example, a pro forma statement of financial position may only include major asset account classifications).
- Whether there are certain accounts or balances included in the financial information on which the intended users of the public document are likely to focus their attention (for example, net assets, total revenue, or net profit after tax).
- The nature of the entity, where the entity is in its life cycle, and the industry and economic environment in which the entity operates.
- The entity's ownership structure and the way it finances its operations (for example, if the entity primarily funds its projects from borrowings, intended users may focus on the entity's debt balances relating to projects in progress).
- The relative volatility of the benchmark.
- A certain percentage is ordinarily then applied to the selected benchmark as a starting point for determining materiality thresholds.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- ~~The assurance practitioner exercises professional judgement when determining the percentage to be applied to the benchmark.~~

Qualitative Factors

~~Some of the qualitative factors that may affect the assurance practitioner's consideration of materiality include:~~

- ~~Law, regulation, or changes in the applicable financial reporting framework that may impact the financial information included in the public document (for example, issue of a new accounting standard applicable to the entity's recognition and/or measurement of revenues).~~
- ~~Matters specific to the industry in which the entity operates that may be relevant to the financial information included in the public document (for example, recent developments in the entity's industry that may be relevant to the entity's measurement and recognition of revenue streams).~~
- ~~Whether the attention of intended users may be focused on particular aspects of the entity's operations (for example, the extent of research and development activities of a pharmaceutical company may be correlated with research and development costs).~~
- ~~Whether there are, or have recently been, material related party or director-related transactions with the entity.~~

Illustrative Representation Letter

The following illustrative letter includes example written representations that can be tailored for specific engagement circumstances.

<p>Engagement Circumstances include the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Engagement in connection with the issue of a prospectus by ABC Company.• Assurance Engagement terms are to express a limited assurance conclusion in an Investigating Accountant's Report<u>Independent Assurance Report</u> covering Historical Financial Information, Pro Forma <u>Historical Financial Information and Prospective Financial Information (best-estimate forecast)</u>Forecast.
--

Firm Name

Address

[Date]

Dear Sirs

Letter of Representation

This letter is provided in connection with your engagement to examine and report as Investigating Accountant on the financial information included in the [public document] of ABC Company. Limited ("ABC Company") to be dated on or around 31 October 20XX ("Prospectus"), in accordance with the terms and conditions contained in your engagement letter dated [insert date]. Expressions defined in the Prospectus have the same meaning in this letter.

General Representations

~~We acknowledge and accept the conditions set out in your engagement letter dated [insert date] as being applicable to your examination of the historical, pro forma historical and forecast financial information (collectively referred to as "the financial information") for the years ended 30 June 20XX and 20X1 respectively to be included in the prospectus.~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

We acknowledge that the statements of limited assurance that you provide to the directors of ABC Company will be based on the examination of the financial information conducted in accordance with Standard on Assurance engagement ASAE 34XX ~~Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and Prospective Financial Information~~Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or Prospective Financial Information. We understand that the examination was a review of the financial information, and was limited primarily to enquiries of ABC Company personnel and analytical review procedures applied to the financial information and thus provides less assurance than an audit. You have not performed an audit and accordingly you do not express an audit opinion. ~~[Note that this paragraph will need to be amended if the engagement~~[Note that this paragraph will need to be amended if the engagement ~~the assurance engagement~~the assurance engagement involves the provision of reasonable assurance in relation to any of the financial information.]

~~We acknowledge our responsibility for the preparation of the prospectus, including the preparation and presentation of all historical financial information, pro forma historical and forecast financial information contained therein and all other information that is not subject to your engagement, including all information required by them accordance with the Corporations Act 2001 (the Act).~~

~~The purpose of your review is to express an opinion as to whether anything comes to your attention that causes you to believe that the financial information in the prospectus is not prepared in all material respects in accordance with the applicable criteria as disclosed in section [X] of the prospectus.~~

We acknowledge that we are responsible for providing, and have provided, [Firm Name] with all the relevant information required in the performance of the assurance engagement, and the preparation of the ~~Investigating Accountant's Report~~Independent Assurance Report for ABC Company and its directors.

~~We acknowledge our responsibility for the preparation of the prospectus, including the preparation and presentation of historical financial information, pro forma historical and forecast financial information contained therein and all other information that is not subject to your engagement.~~

~~We acknowledge our responsibility for disclosing in the prospectus all information required by the Corporations Act 2001 (the Act).~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Historical ~~F~~financial ~~i~~Information and Pro Forma Historical Financial Information

With respect to the historical financial information and pro forma historical financial information, we acknowledge our responsibility for the preparation and presentation of the financial information on which the ~~Investigating Accountant's Report~~Independent Assurance Report is based; being the financial statements of ABC Company for the years ended 30 June 20XX and 20X1 respectively. These financial statements include the Balance Sheet, Profit and Loss Statement and Statement of Cash flows, and related notes.

In the performance of the assurance engagement, [Firm Name] has been entitled to rely on the information provided by ABC Company and to assume that the information provided is, to the best knowledge and belief of management and the directors, accurate and, except where otherwise indicated, complete.

In connection with your review, we confirm, to the best of our knowledge and belief, the following:

- ABC Company's historical and pro forma historical financial information, included in the prospectus, has been prepared on a going concern basis. Having considered the circumstances likely to affect ABC Company during the next 12 months, and the circumstances that we know will arise thereafter, we are satisfied that the going concern basis of preparing the historical financial information and pro forma historical financial information is appropriate;
- ABC Company's historical financial information and pro forma historical financial information, included in the prospectus have been prepared in accordance with the recognition and measurement principles prescribed in Australian Accounting Standards and the accounting policies adopted by ABC Company disclosed in section [X] of the prospectus.
- ~~All~~ All material financial information, financial records, related data and other information relevant to the historical financial information and pro forma historical financial information within the possession of ABC Company have been provided to [Firm Name] prior to the finalisation of the ~~Investigating Accountant's Report~~Independent Assurance Report.
- ~~and We acknowledge responsibility for advising [Firm Name] of any~~ ~~no~~ material changes that may have occurred between the date of ~~that~~ the ~~Investigating-Independent Assurance Accountant's r~~Report and

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

the ~~date of~~ lodgement date of the prospectus with the Australian Securities and Investments Commission (“ASIC”).~~;~~

- ~~• The records maintained by ABC Company during the financial periods under examination were adequate for the preparation of the historical and pro forma historical financial information.~~
- All material transactions have been properly recorded in the accounting records underlying the historical financial information and pro forma historical financial information.
- We are responsible for, and have established and maintained, an adequate internal control structure to facilitate the preparation of reliable financial information. We acknowledge our responsibility for the implementation and operation of accounting and internal controls systems that are designed to prevent and detect fraud and error.
- There has been no fraud or suspected fraud involving any member of management or employee with a significant role in monitoring or implementing ABC Company’s system of internal controls, or any other employee, that could have had a material effect on the historical financial information or pro forma historical financial information.
- [Other than detailed in the ~~public document~~prospectus], there have been no violations, or possible violations, of laws, regulations or contractual agreements, the effects of which should be considered as the basis for recording a liability or for disclosure in the prospectus.
- ~~• [Other than detailed in the prospectus], there have been no communications from governmental or other regulatory authorities concerning non-compliance with, or deficiencies in, financial reporting practices that could have an impact on the historical or pro forma historical financial information.~~
- [Other than detailed in the prospectus], there have been no communications from governmental or other regulatory authorities concerning non-compliance with, or deficiencies in, the group’s adherence to relevant legislation. ABC Company has put in place appropriate procedures to ensure compliance with such legislation and the procedures have been applied throughout the financial periods under review.
- ~~• Adequate financial records have been maintained throughout the financial periods under review including records and registers as required by the Corporations Act 2001 and other legislation.~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- [Other than detailed in the prospectus], there have been no changes in accounting policies, or the application of accounting policies, that would have a material effect on the historical financial information or pro forma historical financial information. The accounting policies have been consistently applied in the preparation of the historical financial information and pro forma historical financial information.
- ~~There have been no changes to, or introduction of new, information systems during the financial periods under review that could adversely impact the basic completeness and accuracy of ABC Company's information systems and underlying data.~~
- ~~We believe the uncorrected misstatements summarised in [Appendix 1] are immaterial, both individually and in aggregate, to the historical and pro forma historical financial information.~~
- We ~~confirm our believe~~ believe that there are no uncorrected misstatements that are material, both individually and in aggregate, to any of the financial information under review. The uncorrected misstatements summarised in [Appendix 1] are, we believe, immaterial, both individually and in aggregate to the historical financial information and pro forma historical financial information.
- To the best of our knowledge and believe all material risks that may impact on the business have been adequately disclosed in the prospectus and considered in relation to their impact on the historical financial information and pro forma historical financial information.
- Other than those already adjusted for, and/or disclosed, there have been no matters or events that have arisen, or been discovered, subsequent to the preparation of the historical and pro forma historical financial information that would require adjustment to that historical financial information and pro forma historical financial information or disclosure in the prospectus.
- [Include any other matters that the assurance practitioner considers necessary]

Directors' Forecast

With respect to the directors' forecast prepared in respect of the financial period 30 June 20XX to 20 June 20X2, we acknowledge our responsibility for the preparation and presentation of that information, the best-estimate assumptions adopted, compliance with ABC Company's accounting policies,

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

which are consistent with the requirements of Australian Accounting Standards, and the intended use of the information.

In the performance of the assurance engagement, [Firm Name] has been entitled to rely on the information provided by ABC Company and to assume that the information provided is, to the best knowledge and belief of management and the directors of ABC Company, accurate and, except where otherwise indicated, complete.

In connection with your review, we confirm, to the best of our knowledge and belief, the following:

- ABC Company's forecast financial information, included in the [public document], has been prepared on a going concern basis. Having considered the circumstances likely to affect ABC Company during the forecast period, and the circumstances that we know will arise thereafter, we are satisfied that the going concern basis of preparing the forecast and pro forma forecast financial information is appropriate.
- ~~All material financial information, records and related data relevant to the directors' forecast within the possession of ABC Company have been provided to [Firm Name] prior to the finalisation of the Investigating Accountant's ReportIndependent Assurance Report.~~
- ~~and no material changes have occurred between the date of that report and the date of lodgement of the prospectus with ASIC.~~
- All forecast events and/or transactions have been properly recorded in the directors' forecast financial information;
- In preparing the directors' forecast, ABC Company has complied with the recognition and measurement principles in Australian Accounting Standards and other mandatory professional reporting requirements in Australia applicable as at the date of the ~~Investigating Accountant's Report~~Independent Assurance Report.
- The assumptions disclosed in the prospectus have been agreed by the ABC Company's board of directors and, taken as a whole, provide reasonable grounds for the preparation of the directors' forecast.
- The assumptions underlying the directors' forecast are reasonable, supportable and consistent between themselves and with ABC Company's strategic plans, and have been consistently applied.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- ABC Company's forecast financial information has been prepared using the directors' best-estimate assumptions, based on present circumstances, as to both the most likely set of economic, operating, developmental, and trading conditions and the course of action ABC Company is most likely to take. Accordingly, the ABC Company's forecast financial information is appropriately called a forecast.
- ~~The assumptions are consistent with the actual year to date results for the [X] months ended 30 June 20XX.~~
- During your review we have made available to you all records and information that was available to us at the time and from which we have based our financial model.
- There will not be any deficiencies or encumbrances attaching to the title of ABC Company's assets during the period covered by the directors' forecast, other than those already reflected in the prospectus.
- All liabilities which will arise out of the activities of ABC Company have been included in the directors' forecast.
- The accounting policies adopted in preparing the directors' forecast for the year ending 30 June 20XX are those that are expected to be used for reporting historical financial information for the corresponding period.
- All material transactions have been properly included in the directors' forecast.
- No event(s) have occurred to the time of signing this letter that would necessitate adjustment to the directors' forecast, or disclosure in the prospectus, which we have not brought to your attention.
- ABC Company has no plans or intentions that could materially affect the book value or classification of assets or liabilities during the period of the directors' forecast that are not already reflected therein.
- The ABC Company's board of directors is not aware of any breach or non-compliance with the terms of any contractual arrangements, however caused, that could initiate claims against ABC Company, and which would have a material effect on the directors' forecast.

[Include any other matters that the assurance practitioner considers necessary]

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
***Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information***

Conclusion

This representation is provided to [Firm Name], [its Directors and employees], in connection with the prospectus dated 30 June 20XX to be issued by ABC Company.

Yours faithfully

ABC Company Limited

Name

Director

Appendix 54

(Ref: Para. A50 and 65)

Illustrations of Assurance Reports

The following illustrations incorporate the requirements of this ASAE. However, they are not intended to suggest standard wording for circumstances relating to all engagements.

Illustration 1: Independent Assurance Report on Historical Financial Information included in a public document, with an unmodified reasonable assurance conclusion

- Illustration ~~124~~: Investigating Accountant's Report~~Independent Assurance Report~~ on Historical and Pro Forma Historical Financial Information included in a ~~prospectus~~public document, with an unmodified limited assurance conclusion
- ~~Illustration 2: Investigating Accountant's Report~~Independent Assurance Report on Historical Financial Information included in a public document, with an unmodified reasonable assurance conclusion
- Illustration ~~32~~: Investigating Accountant's Report~~Independent Assurance Report~~ on Historical and Pro Forma Historical Financial Information included in a public document, with a modified limited assurance conclusion (limitation of scope)
- ~~Illustration 4: Investigating Accountant's Report~~Independent Assurance Report on a Pro Forma Forecast Financial Information included in a public document, with an unmodified limited assurance conclusion
- ~~Illustration 6: Investigating Accountant's Report on compiled financial information, in the form of Pro Forma Financial Information, included in a public document, with an unmodified limited assurance conclusion~~
- ~~Illustration 345~~: Investigating Accountant's Report~~Independent Assurance Report~~ on Prospective Financial Information, in the form of a Forecast included in a public document, with an unmodified limited assurance conclusion

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- ~~Illustration 6: Investigating Accountant's Report on compiled financial information, in the form of Pro Forma Financial Information, included in a public document, with an unmodified limited assurance conclusion~~
 - ~~Illustration 45: Independent Assurance Report on a Forecast and a Pro Forma Forecast Financial Information included in a public document, with an unmodified limited assurance conclusion~~
- ~~Illustration 76: Private Report on the examination of prospective financial information, in the form of a forecast and projection, with an unmodified limited assurance conclusion. NEED TO AMEND APPENDIX TO COVER PROJECTION~~
- ~~Illustration 567: Investigation-Independent Assurance Accountants Report on the proper compilation of pro forma historical financial information, included in a public document, with an unmodified reasonable assurance conclusion~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Illustration 1: Independent Assurance Report on historical financial information with an unmodified reasonable assurance conclusion included in a prospectus

[Date]¹³²

The Directors

ABC Company Limited

[Address]

Dear Directors¹³³

Independent Assurance Report on Historical Financial Information

We have prepared this Independent Assurance Report on Historical Financial Information of ABC Company Limited (“ABC Company”) for inclusion in the prospectus dated on or about [insert date] relating to the issue of [X] ordinary shares in ABC Company.

Expressions or terms defined in the prospectus have the same meaning in this report.

[Insert relevant background information to ABC Company and/or the prospectus if required]

Scope

You have requested [Firm Name] to prepare a report for the review of the following financial information included in the prospectus:

—— the historical statement of comprehensive income of ABC Company for the [year(s)/period(s)] ended [insert date]; and

—— the historical statement of financial position as at [insert date];

collectively called “the Historical Financial Information”.

¹³² The date of both the hard copy and electronic version of the report should be the same. The assurance practitioner may provide the electronic version of the report in Adobe Acrobat® PDF format, where possible, to ensure that the electronic version of the report is identical to the hard copy of the report. See ASIC’s RG 107 *Electronic Prospectuses*.

¹³³ Or other title as appropriate in the circumstances of the assurance engagement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~[Insert any other information relating to the underlying transaction(s), which is deemed relevant.]~~

~~The Historical Financial Information set out in Section [X] of the prospectus has been extracted from the financial report of ABC Company for the year(s) ended [insert date], which was audited by [Firm Name] in accordance with the Australian Auditing Standards. [Firm Name] issued a [modified/unmodified] audit opinion on the financial report.~~

~~The Historical Financial Information is presented in the prospectus in an abbreviated form insofar as it does not include all of the disclosures required by Australian Accounting Standards applicable to year end financial reports prepared in accordance with the Corporations Act 2001.~~

~~Directors' responsibility~~

~~The Directors of ABC Company are responsible for the preparation of the Historical Financial Information.~~

~~Our responsibility~~

~~We have conducted our review of the Historical Financial Information in accordance with the Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or Prospective Financial Information. Additionally, we have complied with relevant ethical requirements and ASQC 1 Quality Control for Firms that Perform Audits and Reviews of Financial Reports and Other Financial Information, and Other Assurance Engagements.~~

~~We reviewed the Historical Financial Information in order to state whether the historical financial information is presented fairly, in all material respects, in accordance with the recognition and measurement principles prescribed in Australian Accounting Standards and accounting policies adopted by ABC Company, as disclosed in Section [X] of the prospectus.~~

~~We made such enquiries and performed such procedures as we, in our professional judgement, considered reasonable in the circumstances including:~~

~~———— analytical procedures on the historical financial information of ABC Company;~~

~~———— a review of ABC Company's work papers, accounting records and other documents;~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~_____ a comparison of consistency in application of the recognition and measurement principles in Australian Accounting Standards, and the accounting policies adopted by ABC Company as disclosed in Section [X] of the prospectus; and~~

~~_____ enquiry of Directors, management and others.~~

~~These procedures do not provide all the evidence that would be required in an audit, thus the level of assurance provided is less than given in an audit. We have not performed an audit and, accordingly, we do not express an audit opinion.~~

Conclusion

Conclusion on Historical Financial Information

~~In our opinion the Historical Financial Information set out in Section [X] of the prospectus, and comprising:~~

~~_____ the historical statement of comprehensive income of ABC Company for the [year(s)/period(s)] ended [insert date]; and~~

~~_____ the historical statement of financial position as at [insert date];~~

~~is presented fairly in accordance with the recognition and measurement principles prescribed in Australian Accounting Standards, and accounting policies adopted by ABC Company, and the Basis of Preparation, as disclosed in Section [X] of the prospectus¹³⁴;~~

Subsequent events

~~Apart from the matters dealt with in this report, and having regard to the scope of our report, to the best of our knowledge and belief, no material transactions or events outside of the ordinary business of ABC Company have come to our attention that would require comment on, or adjustment to, the Historical Financial Information referred to in our report or that would cause such financial information to be misstated.~~

Independence or Disclosure of Interest

¹³⁴ Identify departures from the reporting requirements of the Australian Accounting Standards, if appropriate.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

[Firm Name] does not have any interest in the outcome of this [transaction]¹³⁵
other than in [state interest] for which normal professional fees will be
received.

Yours faithfully

Authorised AFSL Representative _____

[Firm Name] _____ Date

¹³⁵ Identify the nature of the transaction, for example, issue of shares or scheme of
arrangement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Illustration 121: ~~Investigating Accountant's Report~~Independent Assurance Report on historical and pro forma historical financial information with an unmodified limited assurance conclusion included in a prospectus

[Date]¹³⁶

The Directors

ABC Company Limited

[Address]

Dear Directors¹³⁷

**Investigating Accountant's ReportIndependent Assurance Report on
Historical and Pro Forma Historical Financial Information**

~~As agreed in our engagement letter dated [XXXX], w~~We have prepared this ~~Investigating Accountant's Report~~Independent Assurance Report on historical financial information and pro forma historical financial information of ABC Company Limited ("ABC Company") for inclusion in the prospectus dated on or about [insert date] relating to the issue of [X] ordinary shares in ABC Company. ~~[PPL]~~We have conducted our ~~review engagement of the historical financial information~~ review engagement of the historical financial information in accordance with the Standard on Assurance engagement ASAE 34XX ~~Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and Prospective Financial Information~~Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or Prospective Financial Information.

Expressions or terms defined in the prospectus have the same meaning in this report.

Background

[Insert relevant background information to ABC Company and/or the prospectus if required]

¹³⁶ The date of both the hard copy and electronic version of the report should be the same. The assurance practitioner may provide the electronic version of the report in Adobe Acrobat® PDF format, where possible, to ensure that the electronic version of the report is identical to the hard copy of the report. See ASIC's RG 107 *Electronic Prospectuses*.

¹³⁷ Or other title as appropriate in the circumstances of the assurance engagement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~The nature of this report is such that it can only be issued by an entity, which holds an AFSL under the Corporation Act 2001. [Firm name] holds the appropriate AFSL.~~

Scope

You have requested [Firm Name] to ~~prepare a report for the~~ review of the following financial information included in the prospectus:

- (a) the ~~[adjusted] historical~~ statement of comprehensive income of ABC Company for the [year(s)/period(s)] ended [insert date]; and
- (b) the ~~[adjusted] historical~~ statement of financial position as at [insert date];

Collectively referred to as “the Historical Financial Information”, and

- (c) pro forma historical statement of financial position as at [insert date] (collectively called “the Pro Forma Historical Financial Information”). ~~The pro forma historical financial information is based on which assumes completion of the~~ proposed transactions disclosed in Section [X] of the prospectus (~~“the Pro Forma Transactions”~~); collectively referred to as “the Pro Forma Financial Information”.

Due to its nature, the pro forma financial information does not represent the company’s actual [financial position], [financial performance], [or cash flows].

[Insert any other information relating to the underlying transaction(s), which is deemed relevant.]

Review of Historical Financial Information

The historical financial information set out in Section [X] of the prospectus has been extracted from the financial report of ABC Company for the year(s) ended [insert date], which was audited by [Firm Name] in accordance with the Australian Auditing Standards. [Firm Name] issued a [modified/unmodified] audit opinion on the financial report.

Directors’ responsibility

The Directors of ABC Company are responsible for the preparation and presentation of the ~~H~~historical and Pro Forma Historical Ffinancial

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~I~~Information, [including a determination of pro forma adjustments made to the historical financial information].¹³⁸

The ~~H~~istorical ~~F~~inancial ~~I~~nformation is presented in the prospectus in an abbreviated form insofar as it does not include all of the disclosures required by Australian Accounting Standards applicable to year-end financial reports prepared in accordance with the *Corporations Act 2001*.

Our responsibility

Historical Financial Information

~~Our responsibility is to conduct a~~ ~~We have conducted our~~ review of the historical financial information in accordance with the Standard on Assurance Engagement ASAE 34XX ~~Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and Prospective Financial Information~~ Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or Prospective Financial Information. Additionally, we have complied with relevant ethical requirements and ASQC 1 Quality Control for Firms that Perform Audits and Reviews of Financial Reports and Other Financial Information, and Other Assurance Engagements.

We reviewed the Historical Financial Information in order to state whether anything has come to our attention, which causes us to believe that the Historical Financial Information is not presented fairly, in all material respects, in accordance with the recognition and measurement principles prescribed in Australian Accounting Standards and accounting policies adopted by ABC Company, as disclosed in Section [X] of the prospectus.

We made such enquiries and performed such procedures as we, in our professional judgement, considered reasonable in the circumstances including:

- analytical procedures on the ~~pro forma~~ historical financial information of ABC Company;
- a review of ABC Company's work papers, accounting records and other documents;

¹³⁸ ~~Insert the reasons for the adjustments made on the historical financial information; for example, "The adjustments were considered necessary by the Directors to present the historical financial information on a basis consistent with the new accounting policies adopted by ABC Company in the year ended [insert date]"~~.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- ~~• a review of the adjustments made to the historical financial information, as described in Section [X] of the prospectus [if applicable];~~
- a comparison of consistency in application of the recognition and measurement principles in Australian Accounting Standards, and the accounting policies adopted by ABC Company as disclosed in Section [X] of the prospectus; and
- enquiry of Directors, management and others.

These procedures do not provide all the evidence that would be required in an audit, thus the level of assurance provided is less than given in an audit. We have not performed an audit and, accordingly, we do not express an audit opinion.

Review of ~~PP~~ Pro Forma Historical Financial Information

The Pro Forma Historical Financial Information set out in Section [X] of the prospectus has been derived from the [adjusted] historical financial information of ABC Company, after adjusting for the effects of the pro forma ~~transactions and associated~~ adjustments set out in Section [X]. The [adjusted] historical financial information was extracted from the financial report of ABC Company for the year(s) ended [insert date], which was audited by [Firm Name] in accordance

with the Australian Auditing Standards. [Firm Name] issued a [modified/unmodified] audit opinion on the financial report.

~~The Directors are responsible for the preparation of the pro forma historical financial information, including the determination of the pro forma transactions and associated adjustments.~~

We have conducted our review of the pro forma historical financial information in accordance with the Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX ~~Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and Prospective Financial Information~~ Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or Prospective Financial Information. Additionally, we have complied with relevant ethical requirements and ASQC 1 Quality Control for Firms that Perform Audits and Reviews of Financial Reports and Other Financial Information, and Other Assurance Engagements.

We reviewed the pro forma historical financial information in order to state whether anything has come to our attention, which causes us to believe that

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

the pro forma historical financial information is not presented fairly, in all material respects, on the basis of the pro forma ~~transactions and associated~~ adjustments, as described in Section [X] of the prospectus, and in accordance with the accounting policies adopted by ABC Company, as disclosed in Section [X] of the prospectus.

We made such enquiries and performed such procedures as we, in our professional judgement, considered reasonable in the circumstances including:

- analytical procedures on the ~~pro forma~~ historical financial information of ABC Company;
- a review of the pro ~~forma transactions and pro forma~~ adjustments, as disclosed in Section [X] of the prospectus, used in the preparation of the pro forma historical financial information;
- a review of ABC Company's work papers, accounting records and other documents;
- a comparison of consistency in application of the recognition and measurement principles in Australian Accounting Standards, and the accounting policies adopted by ABC Company as disclosed in Section [X] of the prospectus; and
- enquiry of Directors, management and others.

These procedures do not provide all the evidence that would be required in an audit, thus the level of assurance provided is less than given in an audit. We have not performed an audit and, accordingly, we do not express an audit opinion.

Conclusion

~~Review Statement on Historical Financial Information~~

Based on our review, which is not an audit, nothing has come to our attention, which causes us to believe that the Historical Financial Information set out in Section [X] of the prospectus, which comprises:

- (a) the ~~adjusted~~ historical statement of comprehensive income of ABC Company for the [year(s)/period(s)] ended [insert date]; and
- (b) the ~~adjusted~~ historical statement of financial position as at [insert date],

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

is not presented fairly, in all material respects, in accordance with the recognition and measurement principles prescribed in Australian Accounting Standards, and accounting policies adopted by ABC Company, and the Basis of Preparation, as disclosed in Section [X] of the prospectus¹³⁹.

~~Review Statement on Pro Forma Historical Financial Information~~

Based on our review, which is not an audit, nothing has come to our attention which causes us to believe that the Pro Forma Historical Financial Information set out in Section [X] of the prospectus, does not present fairly, in all material respects, the pro forma historical statement of financial position of ABC Company as at [insert the date], on ~~the basis of the pro basis consistent with the stated basis disclosed~~ ~~forma transactions and associated adjustments described~~ in Section [X] of the prospectus, ~~except for, assumptions necessary to comply with the stated basis of preparation as disclosed in section [x] of the document, and otherwise in accordance with the accounting policies adopted by ABC Company, as disclosed in [X] of the prospectus.~~

Subsequent events

Apart from the matters dealt with in this report, and having regard to the scope of our report, to the best of our knowledge and belief, no material transactions or events outside the ordinary business of ABC Company have come to our attention that would require comment on, or adjustment to, the Historical Financial Information referred to in our report ~~or that would cause such financial information to be misleading or deceptively misstated.~~

¹³⁹ Identify departures from the reporting requirements of the Australian Accounting Standards, if appropriate.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Independence or Disclosure of Interest

[Firm Name] does not have any interest in the outcome of this [transaction]¹⁴⁰ other than in [state interest] for which normal professional fees will be received.

Yours faithfully

~~[Partner]~~ Authorised AFSL Representative

[Firm Name]

Date

¹⁴⁰ Identify the nature of the transaction, for example, issue of shares or scheme of arrangement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Illustration 2: Investigating Accountant's Report Independent Assurance
Report on historical financial information with an unmodified
reasonable assurance conclusion included in a prospectus

{Date}¹⁴¹

The Directors

ABC Company Limited

{Address}

Dear Directors¹⁴²

Investigating Accountant's Report Independent Assurance Report on
Historical Financial Information

As agreed in our engagement letter dated [XXXX], we have prepared this Investigating Accountant's Report Independent Assurance Report on Historical Financial Information of ABC Company Limited ("ABC Company") for inclusion in the prospectus dated on or about [insert date] relating to the issue of [X] ordinary shares in ABC Company.

Expressions defined in the prospectus have the same meaning in this report. The nature of this report is such that it can only be issued by an entity, which holds an AFSL under the Corporation Act 2001. [Firm name] holds the appropriate AFSL.

Background

{Insert relevant background information to ABC Company and/or the prospectus}

Scope

You have requested [Firm Name] to prepare a report for the review of the following financial information included in the prospectus: the [adjusted] historical statement of comprehensive income of ABC Company for the [year(s)/period(s)] ended [insert date]; and the [adjusted] historical statement of financial position as at [insert date]; Collectively called "the Historical Financial Information". {Insert any other information relating to the underlying transaction(s), which is deemed relevant.}

Review of Historical Financial Information

The Historical Financial Information set out in Section [X] of the prospectus has been extracted from the financial report of ABC Company for the year(s) ended [insert date], which was audited by [Firm Name] in accordance with the Australian Auditing Standards. [Firm Name] issued a [modified/unmodified] audit opinion on the financial report.

¹⁴¹— The date of both the hard copy and electronic version of the report should be the same. The assurance practitioner may provide the electronic version of the report in Adobe Acrobat® PDF format, where possible, to ensure that the electronic version of the report is identical to the hard copy of the report. See ASIC's RG 107 *Electronic Prospectuses*.

¹⁴²— Or other title as appropriate in the circumstances of the assurance engagement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~The Directors of ABC Company are responsible for the preparation of the Historical Financial Information, [including determination of the adjustments to the historical financial information].¹⁴³~~
~~The Historical Financial Information is presented in the prospectus in an abbreviated form insofar as it does not include all of the disclosures required by Australian Accounting Standards applicable to year end financial reports prepared in accordance with the *Corporations Act 2001*.~~
~~We have conducted our assurance procedures on the Historical Financial Information in accordance with the Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX *Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and Prospective Financial Information*. We conducted our assurance procedures on the Historical Financial Information in order to state whether the historical financial information is presented fairly, in all material respects, in accordance with the recognition and measurement principles prescribed in Australian Accounting Standards and accounting policies adopted by ABC Company, as disclosed in Section [X] of the prospectus.~~

¹⁴³ — Insert the reasons for the adjustments made on the historical financial information; for example, “*The adjustments were considered necessary by the Directors to present the historical financial information on a basis consistent with the new accounting policies adopted by ABC Company in the year ended [insert date]*”.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Conclusion
Conclusion on Historical Financial Information
In our opinion the Historical Financial Information set out in Section [X] of the prospectus, and comprising:
the historical statement of comprehensive income of ABC Company for the [year(s)/period(s)] ended [insert date]; and
the historical statement of financial position as at [insert date],
is presented fairly in accordance with the recognition and measurement principles prescribed in Australian Accounting Standards, and accounting policies adopted by ABC Company, and the Basis of Preparation, as disclosed in Section [X] of the prospectus¹⁴⁴.

Subsequent events
Apart from the matters dealt with in this report, and having regard to the scope of our report, to the best of our knowledge and belief, no material transactions or events outside of the ordinary business of ABC Company have come to our attention that would require comment on, or adjustment to, the Historical Financial Information referred to in our report or that would cause such financial information to be misleading or deceptively misstated.

Independence or Disclosure of Interest
[Firm Name] does not have any interest in the outcome of this [transaction]¹⁴⁵ other than in [state interest] for which normal professional fees will be received.

Yours faithfully
Authorised AFSL Representative [Partner] _____

[Firm Name] _____ Date

Illustration 3: Investigating Accountant's Report on historical and pro forma historical financial information included in a public document, with a modified limited assurance conclusion due to a limitation of scope

[Date]

The Directors

ABC Company Limited

[Address]

Dear Directors¹⁴⁶

¹⁴⁴ Identify departures from the reporting requirements of the Australian Accounting Standards, if appropriate.

¹⁴⁵ Identify the nature of the transaction, for example, issue of shares or scheme of arrangement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Investigating Accountant's Report on Historical and Pro Forma Historical Financial Information

~~As agreed in our engagement letter dated XXXX, we have prepared this Investigating Accountant's Report on Historical and Pro Forma Historical Financial Information of ABC Company Limited ("ABC Company") for inclusion in the [public document]¹⁴⁷ dated on or about [insert date] relating to the issue of [ordinary shares / units] in ABC Company.~~

~~Expressions or terms defined in the [public document] have the same meaning in this report.~~

~~The nature of this report is such that it can only be issued by an entity, which holds an AFSL under the Corporation Act 2001. [Firm name] holds the appropriate AFSL.~~

Background

~~[Insert any background information relating to ABC Company the Entity and/or proposed fundraising/takeover/scheme of arrangement, which is deemed relevant; for example, purpose of the proposed fundraising, if required.]~~

Scope

~~You have requested [Firm Name] to prepare a report for the review of the following financial information included in the [public document]:~~

- ~~(a) the [adjusted] historical statement of comprehensive income of ABC Company for the [year(s)/period(s)] ended [insert date]; and~~
- ~~(b) the [adjusted] historical statement of financial position as at [insert date];~~

~~Collectively called "the Historical Financial Information", and~~

~~the Pro Forma Historical Statement of Financial Position as at [insert date] (collectively called "the Pro Forma Historical Financial Information"). The Pro Forma Historical Financial Information is based on ; which assumes completion of the proposed transactions disclosed in Section [X] of the [public document] ("the Pro Forma Transactions").~~

¹⁴⁶—Or other title as appropriate in the circumstances of the assurance engagement.

¹⁴⁷—Specify the type of the public document.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~Due to its nature, the Pro Forma Financial Information does not represent the company's actual [financial position], [financial performance], [or cash flows].~~

~~[Insert any other information relating to the underlying transaction(s), which is deemed relevant.]~~

Review of Historical Financial Information

~~The historical financial information set out in Section [X] of the [public document] has been extracted from the financial report of ABC Company for the year(s) ended [insert date], which was audited by [Firm Name] in accordance with the Australian Auditing Standards. [Firm Name] issued a [modified/unmodified] audit opinion on the financial report.~~

~~The historical financial information is presented in the [public document] in an abbreviated form insofar as it does not include all of the disclosures required by Australian Accounting Standards applicable to [annual] financial reports prepared in accordance with the Corporations Act 2001.~~

Directors' Responsibility

~~The Directors of ABC Company are responsible for the preparation and presentation of the historical financial information and pro forma historical financial information, [including determination of the pro forma adjustments to the historical financial information].¹⁴⁸~~

Our Responsibility

~~Our responsibility is to ~~The historical financial information is presented in the [public document] in an abbreviated form insofar as it does not include all of the disclosures required by Australian Accounting Standards applicable to [annual] financial reports prepared in accordance with the Corporations Act 2001.~~~~

~~We have conducted the our review of the historical financial information in accordance with the Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and Prospective Financial Information ~~Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or Prospective Financial Information~~. Additionally, we have complied with relevant ethical requirements and ASQC 1 Quality~~

¹⁴⁸ ~~Insert the reasons for the pro forma adjustments made on the historical financial information; for example, "The adjustments were considered necessary by the Directors to present the historical financial information on a basis consistent with the new accounting policies adopted by ABC Company in the year ended [insert date]".~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Control for Firms that Perform Audits and Reviews of Financial Reports and Other Financial Information, and Other Assurance Engagements.

Historical Financial Information

~~We reviewed the historical financial information in order to state whether anything has come to our attention, which causes us to believe that the historical financial information is not presented fairly, in all material respects, in accordance with the recognition and measurement principles prescribed in Australian Accounting Standards and accounting policies adopted by ABC Company, as disclosed in Section [X] of the [public document].~~

~~We made such enquiries and performed such procedures as we, in our professional judgement, considered reasonable in the circumstances including:~~

- ~~• analytical procedures on the pro forma historical financial information of ABC Company;~~
- ~~• a review of ABC Company's work papers, accounting records and other documents;~~
- ~~• a review of the pro forma adjustments made to the historical financial information, as described in Section [X] of the [public document] [if applicable];~~
- ~~• a comparison of consistency in application of the recognition and measurement principles in Australian Accounting Standards, and the accounting policies adopted by ABC Company as disclosed in Section [X] of the [public document]; and~~
- ~~• enquiry of Directors, management and others.~~

~~These procedures do not provide all the evidence that would be required in an audit, thus the level of assurance provided is less than given in an audit. We have not performed an audit and, accordingly, we do not express an audit opinion.~~

Review of Pro Forma Historical Financial Information

~~The Pro Forma Historical Financial Information set out in Section [X] of the [public document] has been derived from the [adjusted] historical financial information of ABC Company, after adjusting for the effects of the pro forma transactions and associated adjustments set out in Section [X]. The [adjusted] Historical Financial Information was extracted from the financial~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~report of ABC Company for the year(s) ended [insert date], which was audited by [Firm Name] in accordance with the Australian Auditing Standards. [Firm Name] issued a [modified/unmodified] audit opinion on the financial report.~~

~~The Directors are responsible for the preparation of the Pro Forma Historical Financial Information, including the determination of the pro forma transactions and pro forma adjustments.~~

~~The pro forma historical financial information is presented in an abbreviated form insofar as it does not include all of the disclosures required by Australian Accounting Standards applicable to [annual] financial reports prepared in accordance with the *Corporations Act 2001*.~~

~~We have conducted our review of the pro forma historical financial information in accordance with the Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX *Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and Prospective Financial Information*. Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or Prospective Financial Information. Additionally, we have complied with relevant ethical requirements and *ASQC 1 Quality Control for Firms that Perform Audits and Reviews of Financial Reports and Other Financial Information, and Other Assurance Engagements*.~~

~~We reviewed the pro forma historical financial information in order to state whether anything has come to our attention, which causes us to believe that the pro forma historical financial information does not present fairly, in all material respects, the pro forma historical statement of financial position of ABC Company as at [insert the date], on a basis consistent with the stated basis disclosed in Section [X] of the prospectus, except for, assumptions necessary to comply with the stated basis of preparation as disclosed in section [x] of the document.~~

~~is not presented fairly, in all material respects, on the basis of the pro forma transactions and pro forma adjustments, as described in Section [X] of the [public document], and in accordance with the accounting policies adopted by ABC Company, as disclosed in Section [X] of the [public document].~~

~~We made such enquiries and performed such procedures as we, in our professional judgement, considered reasonable in the circumstances including:~~

- ~~• analytical procedures on the pro forma historical financial information of ABC Company;~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- a review of the pro forma transactions and associated adjustments, as disclosed in Section [X] of the [public document], used in the preparation of the pro forma historical financial information;
- a review of ABC Company's work papers, accounting records and other documents;
- a comparison of consistency in application of the recognition and measurement principles in Australian Accounting Standards, and the accounting policies adopted by ABC Company as disclosed in Section [X] of the [public document]; and
- enquiry of Directors, management and others.

These procedures do not provide all the evidence that would be required in an audit, thus the level of assurance provided is less than given in an audit. We have not performed an audit and, accordingly, we do not express an audit opinion.

Basis of Qualified Review Conclusion of Pro Forma Historical Financial Information

In preparing the pro forma historical financial information, the Directors of ABC Company only made preliminary adjustments relating to ABC Company's investment in XYZ Company Limited, which has a carrying value of \$XXX as at [insert date] and has been accounted for by equity method. XYZ Limited was acquired by ABC Company as a foreign associate during the year ended [insert date], as described in Section [X] of the [public document]. The preliminary adjustments made by the Directors reflected ABC Company's estimated share in XYZ Limited's net income for the [period] ended [insert date]. XYZ Limited is being audited by a local firm in [XYZ Limited's place of business] and its audit of XYZ Limited's financial report for the [period] ended [insert date] has not yet been completed as at [insert date]. Consequently, the pro forma historical financial information does not necessarily reflect the final audited carrying value of ABC Company's investment in XYZ Limited as at [insert date].

Conclusion

Review Statement on Historical Financial Information

Based on our review, which is not an audit, nothing has come to our attention which causes us to believe that the Historical Financial Information set out in Section [X] of the [public document], and comprises:

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~(a) — the [adjusted] historical statement of comprehensive income of ABC Company for the [year(s)/period(s)] ended [insert date]; and~~

~~(b) — the [adjusted] historical statement of financial position as at [insert date];~~

~~are not presented fairly, in all material respects, in accordance with the recognition and measurement principles prescribed in Australian Accounting Standards, and accounting policies adopted by ABC Company, and the Basis of Preparation, as disclosed in Section [X] of the [public document]¹⁴⁹.~~

~~Review Statement on Pro Forma Historical Financial Information~~

~~Based on our review, which is not an audit, nothing has come to our attention, except for the possible effects described in the Basis for Qualification of Conclusion paragraph, which causes us to believe that the Pro Forma Historical Financial Information set out in Section [X] of the [public document], does not present fairly, in all material respects, the pro forma historical statement of financial position of ABC Company as at [insert the date], on a basis consistent with the stated basis disclosed in Section [X] of the prospectus, except for, assumptions necessary to comply with the stated basis of preparation as disclosed in section [x] of the document.~~

~~does not present fairly, in all material respects, the pro forma historical statement of financial position of ABC Company as at [insert the date], on the basis of the pro forma transactions and pro forma adjustments described in Section [X] of the [public document], and in accordance with the accounting policies adopted by ABC Company, as disclosed in Section [X] of the [public document].~~

~~Subsequent events~~

~~Apart from the matters dealt with in this report, and having regard to the scope of our report, to the best of our knowledge and belief, no material transactions or events outside of the ordinary business of ABC Company have come to our attention that would require comment on, or adjustment to, the historical financial information referred to in our report or that would cause such financial information to be misleading or deceptive.~~

~~Independence or Disclosure of Interest~~

¹⁴⁹ — Identify departures from the reporting requirements of the Australian Accounting Standards, if appropriate.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~{Firm Name} does not have any interest in the outcome of this {transaction}⁴⁵⁰
other than in {state interest} for which normal professional fees will be
received.~~

~~Yours faithfully~~

~~{Partner}~~

~~{Firm Name} _____ Date~~

~~**Independent Assurance Report****Independent Assurance Report****Independent**
Assurance Report~~

⁴⁵⁰—Identify the nature of the transaction, for example, issue of shares or scheme of arrangement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Illustration 442: ~~Investigating Accountant's Report~~ Independent Assurance Report on a Forecast and ~~P~~-pro forma ~~F~~forecast included in a public document, ~~financial information~~ with an unmodified limited assurance conclusion

OUTSTANDING - NEED TO INCLUDE FOFORRECAST IN WORDING NOT YET INCLUDED

[Date]¹⁵¹

The Directors

ABC Company Limited

[Address]

Dear Directors¹⁵²

Investigating Accountant's Report Independent Assurance Report on Pro Forma Forecast Statement of Earnings

~~As agreed in our engagement letter dated XXXX, w~~We have prepared this Investigating Accountant's Report Independent Assurance Report (report) on ~~the~~ pro forma forecast statement of earnings for the [period ending] 30 June 20X0 of ABC Company Limited ["ABC Company"] for inclusion in the [public document]¹⁵³ dated on or about [insert date] relating to the issue of [ordinary shares / units] in ABC Company.

Expressions and terms defined in the [public document] have the same meaning in this report.

~~The nature of this report is such that it can only be issued by an entity, which holds an AFSL under the Corporation Act 2001. [Firm name] holds the appropriate AFSL.~~

Background

¹⁵¹ The date of both the hard copy and electronic version of the report should be the same. The assurance practitioner may provide the electronic version of the report in Adobe Acrobat © PDF format, where possible, to ensure that the electronic version of the report is identical to the hard copy of the report. See ASIC's RG 107 *Electronic Prospectuses*.

¹⁵² Or other title as appropriate in the circumstances of the assurance engagement.

¹⁵³ Specify the type of the public document.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

[Insert any background information relating to ABC Company and/or proposed fundraising/takeover/scheme of arrangement, which is deemed relevant; for example, purpose of the proposed fundraising.]

Scope

You have requested [Firm Name] to prepare a report for the review of the pro forma forecast income statement of ABC Company for the period(s) ending [insert date], as set out in Section [X] of the [public document].

Directors' Responsibility

The Directors are responsible for the preparation of the pro forma forecast statement of earnings for the period ending 30 June 20X0, including the best-estimate assumptions underlying the forecast statement of earnings, and the determination of the pro forma adjustments. The Directors' best-estimate assumptions underlying the forecast statement of earnings are set out in Section [X] of the [public document].

Our Responsibility

We have conducted our examination of the pro forma forecast statement of earnings for the [period] ending 30 June 20X0 in accordance with the Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX *Fundraisings Involving Corporate Fundraisings and Prospective Financial Information*. Additionally, we have complied with relevant ethical requirements and ASQC 1 *Quality Control for Firms that Perform Audits and Reviews of Financial Reports and Other Financial Information, and Other Assurance Engagements*.

~~You have requested [Firm Name] to prepare a report for the review on of the Pro Forma Forecast statement of earnings for the [period] ending 30 June 20X0 included in the [public document].~~

~~[Insert any other information relating to the underlying transaction(s), which is deemed relevant.]~~

~~Review of Pro Forma Forecast Statement of Earnings~~

~~The Pro Forma Forecast has been prepared by the Directors for [the purpose of].¹⁵⁴ We disclaim any assumption of responsibility for any reliance on this~~

¹⁵⁴ Indicate the Directors' purpose for preparing the Financial Forecast, for example: "to provide prospective investors with a guide to the potential financial performance of ABC Company for the year(s) ending [insert date]."

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Report, or on the Pro Forma Forecast to which it relates to any person other than to the Directors, or for any purpose other than that for which it was prepared.¹⁵⁵

The Pro Forma Forecast statement of earnings set out in Section [X] of the [public document], has been derived from Income Statement of ABC Company for the [period] ending 30 June 20X0 set out in Section [X] of the [public document], adjusted for the effects of the ~~pro forma transactions and associated pro forma~~ adjustments, set out in Section [X] of the [public document]. Due to its nature, the pro forma ~~financial information~~ forecast does not represent the company's actual [financial position], [financial performance], [or cash flows].

~~The Directors are responsible for the preparation of the pro forma forecast statement of earnings for the period ending 30 June 20X0, including the best estimate assumptions underlying the forecast statement of earnings, and the determination of the pro forma transactions and pro forma adjustments. The Directors' best estimate assumptions underlying the forecast statement of earnings are set out in Section [X] of the [public document].~~

~~We have conducted our examination of the pro forma forecast statement of earnings for the [period] ending 30 June 20X0 in accordance with the Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX *Fundraisings involving Corporate Fundraisings and Prospective Financial Information*. Our procedures included:~~

- examination, on a test basis, of evidence supporting the best-estimate assumptions set out in Section [X] of the [public document];
- review of the ~~pro forma transactions and pro forma~~ adjustments, as disclosed in Section [X] of the [public document];
- comparison of the consistency in application of the recognition and measurement principles in Australian Accounting Standards, and the accounting policies adopted by ABC Company as disclosed in Section [X] of the [public document].
- enquiry of Directors, management and others; and
- such other analytical procedures as we considered necessary.

¹⁵⁵ When the Investigating Accountant's Report has been prepared for users other than the Directors, this sentence should be amended to state: "We disclaim any assumption of responsibility for any reliance on this Report or on the Financial Forecast to which it relates for any purposes other than that for which it was prepared."

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

These procedures have been undertaken in order to state whether anything has come to our attention, which causes us to believe, in all material respects, that:

- (a) the Directors' best-estimate assumptions do not provide a ~~objectively~~ reasonable grounds for the preparation of the pro forma forecast statement of earnings;
- (b) the pro forma forecast statement of earnings is not:
 - (i) ~~properly~~ prepared on the basis of the best-estimate assumptions as set out in Section [X] of the public document and the pro forma ~~transactions and associated~~ adjustments as described in Section [X] of the public document;
 - (ii) presented fairly, in all material respects on a basis consistent with the stated basis disclosed in Section [X] of the prospectus, except for, assumptions necessary to comply with the stated basis of preparation as disclosed in section [x] of the document presented fairly, in accordance with the recognition and measurement principles in the Australian Accounting Standards and the accounting policies adopted by ABC Company, as disclosed in Section [X] of the [public document]; and
 - ~~(iii) -unreasonable.~~

These procedures do not provide all the evidence that would be required in an audit, thus the level of assurance provided is less than given in an audit. We have not performed an audit and, accordingly, we do not express an audit opinion.

Conclusion

Based on our examination, which is not an audit, nothing has come to our attention, which causes us to believe in all material respects, that:

- (a) the Directors' best-estimate assumptions do not provide ~~an objectively~~ reasonable basis grounds for the preparation of the pro forma forecast statement of earnings;
- (b) the pro forma forecast statement of earnings ~~is not properly prepared on the basis of the assumptions as set out in Section [X] of the public document, and the pro forma transactions and associated adjustments as described in Section [X] of the [public document]; and presented~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~fairly, does not present fairly, in all material respects, the pro forma historical statement of financial position of ABC Company as at [insert the date], on a basis consistent with the stated basis disclosed in Section [X] of the prospectus, except for, assumptions necessary to comply with the stated basis of preparation as disclosed in section [x] of the document in accordance with the accounting policies adopted by ABC Company, and the Basis of Preparation, as disclosed in Section [X] of the [public document]; and~~

- (c) the pro forma forecast itself is unreasonable.

Actual results are likely to be different from the forecast since anticipated events frequently do not occur as expected and the variation may be material. Accordingly, we express no opinion as to whether the pro forma forecast will be achieved.

The Pro Forma Forecast has been prepared by management and adopted by the Directors in order to provide prospective investors with a guide to the potential financial performance of the [company] for the period ended [date]. There is a considerable degree of subjective judgement involved in preparing forecasts. The underlying assumptions are also subject to uncertainties and contingencies, which are often outside the control of the [company]. The Pro Forma Forecast has been prepared using assumptions summarised in the [public document] which are based on best-estimate assumptions relating to future events that management expect to occur and actions that management expect to take.

The sensitivity analysis set out in Section[X] of the [public document] demonstrates the impacts on the Pro Forma Forecast of changes in key assumptions. The Pro Forma Forecast is therefore only indicative of the financial performance, which may be achievable. Prospective investors should be aware of the material risks and uncertainties relation to an investment in the [company], which are detailed in the [public document], and the inherent uncertainty relating to the Pro Forma Forecast. Accordingly, prospective investors should have regard to the investment risks and sensitivities set out in Section [X] of the public document.

Prospective financial information, such as the Pro Forma Forecast relate to events and actions that have not yet occur and may not occur. While evidence may be available to support the assumptions on which the Pro Forma Forecast is based, those assumptions are generally future orientated and therefore speculative in nature. Accordingly, actual financial performance may vary from the prospective financial information presented in the [public document] and such variations may be material. [In addition, the actual financial performance may include any gains or losses arising from

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

movements in the market values of investment properties and derivatives.]
We express no opinion as to whether the Pro Forma Forecast will be
achieved.

Independence or Disclosure of Interest

[Firm Name] does not have any interest in the outcome of this [transaction]¹⁵⁶
other than in [state interest] for which normal professional fees will be
received.

Yours faithfully

Authorised AFSL Representative~~[Partner]~~

[Firm Name]

Date

¹⁵⁶ Identify the nature of the transaction, for example, issue of shares or scheme of
arrangement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Illustration 53: Independent Assurance Report on the examination of prospective financial information in the form of a forecast included in a public document with an unmodified limited assurance conclusion

[Date]¹⁵⁷

The Directors

ABC Company Limited

[Address]

Part 1- Independent Assurance Report on Forecast Financial Information

Dear Directors¹⁵⁸

We have prepared this Independent Assurance Report (report) on the forecast financial information of ABC Company Limited (“ABC Company”) for inclusion in the [public document¹⁵⁹] dated on or about [insert date] relating to the issue of [ordinary shares/units] in ABC Company. Expressions defined in the [public document] have the same meaning in this report.

[Insert any background information relating to ABC Company and/or the proposed fundraising which is deemed relevant, if required.]

Scope

You have requested [Firm Name] to prepare a report for the review on the forecast income statement of ABC Company for the year(s) ending [insert date] (“the Financial Forecast”), as set out in Section [X] of the [public document]. The Financial Forecast has been prepared by the Directors for [the purpose of].¹⁶⁰ We disclaim any assumption of responsibility for any reliance on this Report, or on the Financial Forecast to which it relates to any

¹⁵⁷ The date of both the hard copy and electronic version of the report should be the same. See ASIC’s RG 107 *Electronic Prospectuses*.

¹⁵⁸ Or other title as appropriate in the circumstances of the assurance engagement.

¹⁵⁹ Specify the type of the public document.

¹⁶⁰ Indicate the Directors’ purpose for preparing the Financial Forecast, for example: “to provide prospective investors with a guide to the potential financial performance of ABC Company for the year(s) ending [insert date].”

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

person other than to the Directors, or for any purpose other than that for which it was prepared.¹⁶¹

Directors' Responsibility

The Directors of ABC Company are responsible for the preparation and presentation of the Financial Forecast, including the best-estimate assumptions set out in Section [X] of the [public document], on which the Financial Forecast is based.

Our Responsibility

We have conducted our review of the Financial Forecast in accordance with the Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX Fundraisings involving Corporate Fundraisings and Prospective Financial Information. Additionally, we have complied with relevant ethical requirements and ASQC 1 Quality Control for Firms that Perform Audits and Reviews of Financial Reports and Other Financial Information, and Other Assurance Engagements.

Our procedures included examination, on a test basis, of evidence supporting the best-estimate assumptions, enquiry and comparison and such other analytical procedures, as we considered necessary in the circumstances. These procedures have been undertaken to form a conclusion whether anything has come to our attention, which causes us to believe, in all material respects, that:

- the Directors' best-estimate assumptions as set out in Section [X] of the [public document] do not provide an reasonable basis for the preparation of the forecast; and
- in all material respects, the Financial Forecast is not:
 - (d) properly prepared on the basis of the best-estimate assumptions as set out in Section [X];
 - (e) presented fairly in accordance with the recognition and measurement principles in the Australian Accounting Standards and accounting policies adopted and disclosed by ABC Company and the Basis of Preparation in Section [X] of the [public document]; and

¹⁶¹ When the Investigating Accountant's Report has been prepared for users other than the Directors, this sentence should be amended to state: "We disclaim any assumption of responsibility for any reliance on this Report or on the Financial Forecast to which it relates for any purposes other than that for which it was prepared."

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

(f) unreasonable.

The Financial Forecast relates to events and actions that have not yet occurred and may not occur. While evidence may be available to support the best-estimate assumptions on which the Financial Forecast is based, such evidence is generally future oriented and therefore speculative in nature. Given the nature of the evidence available in assessing the reasonableness of the Directors' best-estimate assumptions, we are not in a position to obtain the level of assurance necessary to express a reasonable assurance conclusion on those assumptions. Accordingly, we provide a lesser level of assurance on the reasonableness of the Directors' best-estimate assumptions.¹⁶² The conclusion expressed in this Report has been formed on the above basis.

Forecast

Based on our review, nothing has come to our attention, which causes us to believe that, in all material respects:

- the Directors' best-estimate assumptions as set out in Section [X] of the [public document] do not provide an reasonable basis for the preparation of the forecast; and
- in all material respects, the Financial Forecast is not:
 - (a) properly prepared on the basis of the best-estimate assumptions as set out in Section [X];
 - (b) presented fairly in accordance with the recognition and measurement principles in the Australian Accounting Standards and accounting policies adopted and disclosed by ABC Company and the Basis of Preparation in Section [X] of the [public document]; and
 - (c) unreasonable.

Actual results are likely to be different from the forecast since anticipated events frequently do not occur as expected and the variation may be material. Accordingly, we express no opinion as to whether the Financial Forecast will be achieved.

The Financial Forecast(s) [has/have] been prepared by management and adopted by the Directors in order to provide prospective investors with a guide to the potential financial performance of the [company] for the period

¹⁶² where appropriate.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

ended [date]. There is a considerable degree of subjective judgement involved in preparing forecasts. The underlying assumptions are also subject to uncertainties and contingencies, which are often outside the control of the [company]. The Financial Forecast has been prepared using assumptions summarised in the [public document] which are based on best-estimate assumptions relating to future events that management expect to occur and actions that management expect to take.

The sensitivity analysis set out in Section[X] of the [public document] demonstrates the impacts on the Financial Forecast of changes in key assumptions. The Financial Forecast is therefore only indicative of the financial performance, which may be achievable. Prospective investors should be aware of the material risks and uncertainties relation to an investment in the [company], which are detailed in the [public document], and the inherent uncertainty relating to the Financial Forecast. Accordingly, prospective investors should have regard to the investment risks and sensitivities set out in Section [X] of the public document.

Prospective financial information, such as the Financial Forecast relate to events and actions that have not yet occur and may not occur. While evidence may be available to support the assumptions on which the Forecast(s) [is/are] based, those assumptions are generally future orientated and therefore speculative in nature. Accordingly, actual financial performance may vary from the prospective financial information presented in the [public document] and such variations may be material. [In addition, the actual financial performance may include any gains or losses arising from movements in the market values of investment properties and derivatives.] We express no opinion as to whether the Financial Forecast(s) will be achieved.

[Independence or Disclosure of Interest Statement]

Yours faithfully

Authorised AFSL Representative _____

[Firm Name] _____ Date

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~Illustration 5: Investigating Accountant's Report on the examination of prospective financial information in the form of a forecast included in a public document with an unmodified limited assurance conclusion~~

~~{Date}¹⁶³~~

~~The Directors~~

~~ABC Company Limited~~

~~{Address}~~

~~Part 1—Investigating Accountant's Report on Forecast Financial Information~~

~~Dear Directors¹⁶⁴~~

~~As agreed in our engagement letter dated XXXX, we have prepared this Investigating Accountant's Report (report) on the forecast financial information of ABC Company Limited ("ABC Company") for inclusion in the {public document¹⁶⁵} dated on or about {insert date} relating to the issue of {ordinary shares/units} in ABC Company. Expressions defined in the {public document} have the same meaning in this report.~~

~~The nature of this report is such that it can only be issued by an entity, which holds an AFSL under the Corporation Act 2001. {Firm name} holds the appropriate AFSL.~~

~~Background~~

~~The nature of this report is such that it can only be issued by an entity, which holds an AFSL under the Corporation Act 2001. {Firm name} holds the appropriate AFSL.~~

~~{Insert any background information relating to the entity and/or the proposed fundraising/takeover/scheme of arrangement, which is deemed relevant; for example, describe the purpose of the corporate fundraising.}~~

¹⁶³—The date of both the hard copy and electronic version of the report should be the same. See ASIC's RG 107 *Electronic Prospectuses*.

¹⁶⁴—Or other title as appropriate in the circumstances of the assurance engagement.

¹⁶⁵—Specify the type of the public document.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Scope

You have requested [Firm Name] to prepare a report for the review of the forecast income statement of ABC Company for the year(s) ending [insert date] (“the Financial Forecast”), as set out in Section [X] of the [public document].

The Directors of ABC Company are responsible for the preparation and presentation of the Financial Forecast, including the best estimate assumptions set out in Section [X] of the [public document], on which the Financial Forecast is based.

The Financial Forecast has been prepared by the Directors for [the purpose of]¹⁶⁶. We disclaim any assumption of responsibility for any reliance on this Report, or on the Financial Forecast to which it relates to any person other than to the Directors, or for any purpose other than that for which it was prepared.¹⁶⁷

We have conducted our review of the Financial Forecast in accordance with the Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX *Fundraisings involving Corporate Fundraisings and Prospective Financial Information*. Our procedures included examination, on a test basis, of evidence supporting the best estimate assumptions, enquiry and comparison and such other analytical procedures, as we considered necessary in the circumstances. These procedures have been undertaken to form a conclusion whether anything has come to our attention, which causes us to believe, in all material respects, that:

- the Directors’ best estimate assumptions as set out in Section [X] of the [public document] do not provide an objectively reasonable basis for the preparation of the forecast; and
- the Financial Forecast is not:

(d) properly prepared on the basis of the assumptions as set out in Section [X], and

¹⁶⁶ — Indicate the Directors’ purpose for preparing the Financial Forecast, for example: “to provide prospective investors with a guide to the potential financial performance of ABC Company for the year(s) ending [insert date].”

¹⁶⁷ — When the Investigating Accountant’s Report has been prepared for users other than the Directors, this sentence should be amended to state: “We disclaim any assumption of responsibility for any reliance on this Report or on the Financial Forecast to which it relates for any purposes other than that for which it was prepared.”

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~_____ presented on a basis consistent with the recognition and measurement principles in the Australian Accounting Standards and accounting policies adopted and disclosed by ABC Company and the Basis of Preparation in Section [X] of the [public document]; and~~

~~(e) _____ .unreasonable.~~

~~The Financial Forecast relates to events and actions that have not yet occurred and may not occur. While evidence may be available to support the best estimate assumptions on which the Financial Forecast is based, such evidence is generally future oriented and therefore speculative in nature. Given the nature of the evidence available in assessing the reasonableness of the Directors' best estimate assumptions, we are not in a position to obtain the level of assurance necessary to express a reasonable assurance conclusion on those assumptions. Accordingly, we provide a lesser level of assurance on the reasonableness of the Directors' best estimate assumptions.¹⁶⁸ The conclusion expressed in this Report has been formed on the above basis.~~

Review Statement

~~Based on our review, nothing has come to our attention, which causes us to believe that, in all material respects:~~

- ~~● _____ the Directors' best estimate assumptions, as set out in Section [X] of the [public document] do not provide a objectively reasonable basis for the preparation of the Financial Forecast(s);~~
- ~~● _____ the Financial Forecast(s) is[/are] has not been properly prepared on the basis of the Directors' assumptions (set out in Section [X] of the [public document]); and on a basis consistent with the accounting policies adopted and used by ABC Company set out in Section [X] of the [public document] (except for the changes in accounting policies as disclosed in Section [X] of the [public document]);¹⁶⁹~~
- ~~● _____ Actual results are likely to be different from the forecast since anticipated events frequently do not occur as expected and the variation may be material. Accordingly, we express no opinion as to whether the forecast will be achieved.~~

¹⁶⁸ _____ where appropriate.

¹⁶⁹ _____ where appropriate.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~{Independence or Disclosure of Interest Statement}~~

Yours faithfully

~~Authorised AFSL Representative{Partner} _____~~

~~{Firm Name} _____ Date~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~Illustration 6: Investigating Accountant's Report~~Independent Assurance Report on the proper compilation of Pro Forma Financial Information with an unmodified limited assurance conclusion****

{Date}¹⁷⁰

The Directors

{Name of Entity}

{Address}

~~Investigating Accountant's Report~~Independent Assurance Report on the Compilation of Pro Forma Financial Information****

Dear Directors¹⁷¹

As agreed in our engagement letter dated XXXX, we have completed our assurance engagement to report whether the pro forma financial information has been properly compiled by [the Directors]. The pro forma financial information consists of [the pro forma net asset statement as at {date}], [the pro forma income statement for the period ended {date}] [and the pro forma cash flow statement for the period ended {date}] [as set out on Section [X] of the {public document}] issued by the company. The applicable criteria in accordance with which [the Directors] has performed the compilation are specified in Section [X] of the [public document].

The pro forma financial information has been compiled by the Directors to illustrate the impact of the [event or transaction] set out in Section [X] on the [public document]. As part of the process, information about the company's [financial position], [financial performance] [and cash flows] has been extracted from the company's financial report [for the period ended {date}], on which [[an audit or review] report]/[no audit or review report] has been issued. Due to its nature, the pro forma financial information does not represent the company's actual [financial position], [financial performance], [or cash flows].

The nature of this report is such that it can only be issued by an entity, which holds an AFSL under the Corporation Act 2001. [Firm name] holds the appropriate AFSL.

¹⁷⁰—The date of both the hard copy and electronic version of the report should be the same. The assurance practitioner may provide the electronic version of the report in Adobe Acrobat® PDF format, where possible, to ensure that the electronic version of the report is identical to the hard copy of the report. See ASIC's RG 107 *Electronic Prospectuses*.

¹⁷¹—Or other title as appropriate in the circumstances of the assurance engagement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Directors' Responsibilities for the Pro Forma Financial Information

The Directors of ABC Company are responsible for compiling the pro forma financial information on the basis stated.

Assurance Practitioner Responsibilities

Our responsibility is to express a conclusion about whether the pro forma financial information has been properly compiled by [the Directors] on the basis stated. We conducted our engagement in accordance with the Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX *Fundraisings involving Corporate Fundraisings and Prospective Financial Information*, issued by the Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (AUASB). This Standard on Assurance Engagements requires that the assurance practitioner comply with relevant ethical requirements, and plan and perform procedures to obtain limited assurance on whether anything comes to our attention that causes us to believe that the pro forma financial information has not been compiled by [the Directors], in all material respects, in accordance basis stated. Under the Standard on Assurance Engagements, pro form financial information is described as being properly compiled when [the Directors] has, in all material respects, performed the compilation on the basis stated.

Our procedures included obtaining evidence about whether:

- [The Directors] have an appropriate basis for presenting the significant effects directly attributable to the event(s) or transaction(s);
- The related pro forma adjustments give appropriate effect to that identified basis;
- The pro forma column reflects the proper application those adjustments to the base financial information used as the source

The procedures selected depend on the assurance practitioner's judgement, having regard to the assurance practitioner's understanding of the nature of the company, the event(s) or transaction(s) in respect of which the pro forma financial information has been compiled, and other relevant engagement circumstances. The engagement also involves evaluating the overall presentation of the pro forma financial information.

We believe that the evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our conclusion.

We are not responsible for updating any previously issued audit or review reports on any financial information used in compiling the pro forma

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

~~financial information. In addition, we have not performed an audit or review of the pro forma financial information and, accordingly, we do not express an opinion on the pro forma financial information itself.~~

~~Conclusion~~

~~Based on our examination, nothing has come to our attention that causes us to believe that the pro forma financial information has not been compiled, in all material respects, in accordance with the basis stated.~~

~~Independence or Disclosure of Interest Statement~~

~~Yours faithfully~~

~~Authorised AFSL Representative[Partner] _____~~

~~{Firm Name} _____ Date~~

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Illustration 74: ~~Independent Assurance Report~~ ~~Private Report~~ ~~Independent Assurance Report~~ ~~Report~~ on the examination of prospective financial information in the form of a forecast (~~including hypothetical assumptions~~) with an unmodified limited assurance conclusion not included in a public document.

[Date]

The Directors

[Name of Entity]

[Address]

The Directors¹⁷²

~~Private Report~~ ~~Independent Assurance Report~~ ~~Report~~ on the ~~Examination of~~ Prospective Financial Information

As agreed in our engagement letter dated XXXX, we have prepared this ~~Private Report~~ ~~Independent Assurance Report~~ ~~Report~~ (~~report~~) on the forecast financial information of ABC Company Limited (“ABC Company”) for distribution to users specified in Section [X] relating to the issue of [ordinary shares/units] in ABC Company.

The nature of this report is such that it can only be issued by an entity, which holds an AFSL under the Corporation Act 2001. [Firm name] holds the appropriate AFSL.

Background

[Insert any background information relating to ~~ABC Company the entity~~ and/or the proposed fundraising/~~takeover/scheme of arrangement, which is deemed relevant; if any, for example, describe the purpose of the proposed fundraising.~~]

Scope

You have requested [Firm Name] to prepare a report on the examination of the forecast income statement of ABC Company prepared for the year(s) ending [insert date] (“the Financial Forecast”), as set out in Section [X] of the ~~Private Report~~ document

¹⁷² — Or other title as appropriate in the circumstances of the assurance engagement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements Involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

The Financial Forecast has been prepared by management for [the purpose of].¹⁷⁵ We disclaim any assumption of responsibility for any reliance on this Report, or on the Financial Forecast to which it relates to any person other than management, or for any purpose other than that for which it was prepared.¹⁷⁶ We have assumed, and relied on representations from certain members of management of [ABC Company] that all material information concerning the prospects and proposed operations of the Company has been disclosed to us and that the information provided to use for the purpose of our work is true, complete and accurate in all respects. We have no reason to believe that those representations are false.

—Managements' Responsibility

The Management of ABC Company are responsible for the preparation and presentation of the Financial Forecast, including the best-estimate and hypothetical assumptions set out in Section [X] of the **Private Report document**, on which the Financial Forecast is based.

Our Responsibility

~~The Financial Forecast has been prepared by management for [the purpose of].¹⁷⁵ We disclaim any assumption of responsibility for any reliance on this Report, or on the Financial Forecast to which it relates to any person other than management, or for any purpose other than that for which it was prepared.¹⁷⁶ We have assumed, and relied on representations from certain members of management of [ABC Company] that all material information concerning the prospects and proposed operations of the Company has been disclosed to us and that the information provided to use for the purpose of our work is true, complete and accurate in all respects. We have no reason to believe that those representations are false.~~

We have conducted our examination of the Financial Forecast in accordance with the Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX *Fundraisings Involving Corporate Fundraisings and Prospective Financial Information*. Additionally, we have complied with relevant ethical requirements and ASQC 1 Quality Control for Firms that Perform Audits and Reviews of

..

¹⁷⁵ Indicate the Directors' purpose for preparing the Financial Forecast, for example: "to provide prospective investors with a guide to the potential financial performance of ABC Company for the year(s) ending [insert date]."

¹⁷⁶ When the Investigating Accountant's Report has been prepared for users other than the Directors, this sentence should be amended to state: "We disclaim any assumption of responsibility for any reliance on this Report or on the Financial Forecast to which it relates for any purposes other than that for which it was prepared."

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Financial Reports and Other Financial Information, and Other Assurance Engagements

-Our procedures included examination, on a test basis, of evidence supporting the best-estimate assumptions, enquiry and comparison and such other analytical procedures, as we considered necessary in the circumstances. These procedures have been undertaken to form a conclusion whether anything has come to our attention, which causes us to believe that:

- Management’s best-estimate assumptions as set out in Section [X] of the Private Report ~~Independent Assurance Report~~ do not provide an ~~objectively r~~reasonable basis for the preparation of the forecast; and
- ~~whether,~~ in all material respects, the forecast is not:
 - (a) ~~properly~~ prepared on the basis of the best-estimate assumptions as set out in Section [X] ~~of the document;~~ and
 - ~~(b)~~ (b) is not presented fairly ~~in accordance with the on a basis consistent with the r~~recognition and measurement principles in ~~the Australian Accounting Standards and~~ the accounting policies adopted and disclosed by ABC Company in Section [X] of the ~~Private Report~~document) ~~and~~
 - ~~(b)(c)~~ (c) ~~unreasonable.~~

The Financial Forecast relates to events and actions that have not yet occurred and may not occur. While evidence may be available to support the best-estimate assumptions on which the Financial Forecast is based, such evidence is generally future oriented and therefore speculative in nature. Given the nature of the evidence available in assessing the reasonableness of management’s best-estimate assumptions, we are not in a position to obtain the level of assurance necessary to express a reasonable assurance conclusion on those assumptions. Accordingly, we provide a lesser level of assurance on the reasonableness of managements best-estimate assumptions.¹⁷⁷ The conclusion expressed in this Private Report ~~Independent Assurance Report~~ has been formed on the above basis.

Review Statement

Based on our review, nothing has come to our attention, which causes us to believe that, in all material respects:

¹⁷⁷ — where appropriate.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

- ~~Managements best estimate assumptions, as set out in Section [X] of the Private Report document underlying the Financial Forecast do not provide an objectively reasonable basis for the preparation of the Financial Forecast(s); and~~
- ~~the Financial Forecast(s) is/[are] has not been prepared on the basis of managements assumptions (set out in Section [X] of the Private Report document); the recognition and measurement principles in the Australian Accounting Standards and the and on a basis consistent with the accounting policies adopted and used by ABC Company set out in Section [X] of the Private Report Independent Assurance Report (except for the changes in accounting policies as disclosed in Section [X]).¹⁷⁸ and~~
- ~~the financial forecast is unreasonable. Management's best-estimate assumptions as set out in Section [X] of the Private Report do not provide an reasonable basis for the preparation of the forecast; and~~
- ~~in all material respects, the forecast is not:~~
 - ~~(d) properly prepared on the basis of the best-estimate assumptions as set out in Section [X] of the document; and~~
 - ~~(e) is not presented fairly in accordance with the recognition and measurement principles in the Australian Accounting Standards and the accounting policies adopted and disclosed by ABC Company in Section [X] of the document) and~~
- ~~unreasonable.~~

Actual results are likely to be different from the Financial Forecast since anticipated events frequently do not occur as expected and the variation may be material. Accordingly, we express no opinion as to whether the Financial Forecast will be achieved.

Reliance on this Report

This report is address to the Director's [ABC Company] (as responsible party for ABC Company) and [specify].

We have not taking instructions from the above parties (other than XXX), nor have they confirmed the suitability of our Engagement Letter for their individual purposes.

¹⁷⁸ where appropriate.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

This report may be disclosed on a confidential basis to [specify] for the purposes of [specify]. In permitting this report to be shown to [specify] we make no representation that it is adequate for their purses and do not assume any responsibility or duty to them for the consequences of any reliance they may choose to place on this private report, or our work.

[Include any other matters that the assurance practitioner considers necessary]

Independence or Disclosure of Interest

[Firm Name] does not have any interest in the outcome of this [transaction]¹⁷⁹ other than in [state interest] for which normal professional fees will be received.

Yours faithfully

Authorised AFSL Representative [Partner]

[Firm Name]

Date

¹⁷⁹—Indicate the nature of the transaction; for example, issue of shares or a scheme of arrangement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

Illustration 64: Independent Assurance Report on the proper compilation of Pro Forma (Historical) Financial Information included in a document related to a fundraising, with an unmodified reasonable assurance conclusion

[Date]¹⁸⁰

The Directors

[Name of Entity]

[Address]

Independent Assurance Report on the Proper Compilation of Pro Forma Historical Financial Information

Dear Directors¹⁸¹

We have prepared this Independent Assurance Report on the proper compilation of the pro forma historical financial of ABC Company for inclusion in the [public document].

The pro forma financial information consists of [the pro forma net asset statement as at [date]], [the pro forma income statement for the period ended [date]] [and the pro forma cash flow statement for the period ended [date]] [as set out on Section [X] of the [public document] issued by the company]. The applicable criteria in accordance with which [the Directors] has performed the proper compilation are specified in Section [X] of the [public document].

The pro forma historical financial information has been compiled by the Directors to illustrate the impact of the [event or transaction] set out in Section [X] on the [public document]. As part of the process, information about the company's [financial position], [financial performance] [and cash flows] has been extracted from the company's financial report [for the period ended [date]], on which [[an audit or review] report]/[no audit or review report] has been issued. Due to its nature, the pro forma historical financial

¹⁸⁰ The date of both the hard copy and electronic version of the report should be the same. The assurance practitioner may provide the electronic version of the report in Adobe Acrobat® PDF format, where possible, to ensure that the electronic version of the report is identical to the hard copy of the report. See ASIC's RG 107 *Electronic Prospectuses*.

¹⁸¹ Or other title as appropriate in the circumstances of the assurance engagement.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

information does not represent the company's actual [financial position], [financial performance], [or cash flows].

The nature of this report is such that it can only be issued by an entity, which holds an AFSL under the Corporation Act 2001. [Firm name] holds the appropriate AFSL.

Directors' Responsibilities

The Directors of ABC Company are responsible for compiling the pro forma financial information on the basis stated.

Our Responsibilities

Our responsibility is to express reasonable assurance about whether the pro forma financial information has been properly compiled by [the Directors] in accordance on the basis stated. We have conducted our engagement in accordance with the Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX *Fundraisings involving Corporate Fundraisings and Prospective Financial Information*, issued by the Auditing and Assurance Standards Board (AUASB). Additionally, we have complied with relevant ethical requirements and ASQC 1 *Quality Control for Firms that Perform Audits and Reviews of Financial Reports and Other Financial Information, and Other Assurance Engagements*.

Our procedures included obtaining evidence about whether:

- [The Directors] have an appropriate basis for presenting the significant effects directly attributable to the event(s) or transaction(s);
- The related pro forma adjustments give appropriate effect to that identified basis;
- The pro forma historical financial information reflects the proper application of the pro forma adjustments to the historical financial information.

The procedures selected depend on the assurance practitioner's judgement, having regard to the assurance practitioner's understanding of the nature of the company, the event(s) or transaction(s) in respect of which the pro forma financial information has been compiled, and other relevant engagement circumstances. The assurance engagement also involves evaluating the overall presentation of the pro forma historical financial information.

Proposed Standard on Assurance Engagements ASAE 34XX
Assurance Engagements involving Corporate Fundraisings and/or
Prospective Financial Information

We believe that the evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our conclusion.

For the purposes of this engagement, we are not responsible for updating or reissuing any reports or opinions on any financial information used in compiling the pro forma historical financial information. We have not performed an audit or review of the pro forma historical financial information itself, nor in the course of this engagement performed an audit or review of the financial information used in compiling the pro forma financial information.

Conclusion

In our opinion, the pro forma historical financial information has been properly compiled on the basis stated.

Independence or Disclosure of Interest Statement

Yours faithfully

Authorised AFSL Representative

[Firm Name]

Date